







# Marantz<sup>®</sup> AV Surround Receiver SR5007

**Owner's Manual** 

### □ SAFETY PRECAUTIONS



#### CAUTION:

#### TO REDUCE THE RISK OF ELECTRIC SHOCK, DO NOT REMOVE COVER (OR BACK). NO USER-SERVICEABLE PARTS INSIDE. **REFER SERVICING TO QUALIFIED SERVICE PERSONNEL.**



The lightning flash with arrowhead symbol, within an equilateral triangle, is intended to alert the user to the presence of uninsulated "dangerous voltage" within the product's enclosure that may be of sufficient magnitude to constitute a risk of electric shock to persons.



The exclamation point within an equilateral triangle is intended to alert the user to the presence of important operating and maintenance (servicing) instructions in the literature accompanying the appliance.

#### WARNING: TO REDUCE THE RISK OF FIRE OR ELECTRIC SHOCK, DO NOT EXPOSE THIS APPLIANCE TO RAIN OR MOISTURE.



Hot

mark

#### CAUTION: HOT SURFACE. DO NOT TOUCH.

The top surface over the internal heat sink may become hot when operating this product continuously.

Do not touch hot areas, especially around the "Hot surface surface mark" and the top panel.

# **IMPORTANT SAFETY** INSTRUCTIONS

- Read these instructions.
- 2. Keep these instructions.
- 3. Heed all warnings.
- 4. Follow all instructions.
- 5. Do not use this apparatus near water.
- 6. Clean only with dry cloth.
- 7. Do not block any ventilation openings.
- Install in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. 8. Do not install near any heat sources such as radiators, heat registers, stoves, or other apparatus (including amplifiers) that produce heat.
- 9. Do not defeat the safety purpose of the polarized or grounding-type plug. A polarized plug has two blades with one wider than the other. A grounding type plug has two blades and a third grounding prong. The wide blade or the third prong are provided for your safety. If the provided plug does not fit into vour outlet, consult an electrician for replacement of the obsolete outlet.
- 10. Protect the power cord from being walked on or pinched particularly at plugs, convenience receptacles, and the point where they exit from the apparatus.
- 11. Only use attachments/accessories specified by the manufacturer.
- 12. Use only with the cart, stand, tripod, bracket, or table specified by the manufacturer, or sold with the apparatus. When a cart is used, use caution when moving the cart/ apparatus combination to avoid injury from tip-over.
- 13. Unplug this apparatus during lightning storms or when unused for long periods of time.
- 14. Refer all servicing to gualified service personnel. Servicing is required when the apparatus has been damaged in any way, such as power-supply cord or plug is damaged, liquid has been spilled or objects have fallen into the apparatus, the apparatus has been exposed to rain or moisture, does not operate normally, or has been dropped.
- 15. Batteries shall not be exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like.

### CAUTION:

To completely disconnect this product from the mains, disconnect the plug from the wall socket outlet.

The mains plug is used to completely interrupt the power supply to the unit and must be within easy access by the user.

### FCC INFORMATION (For US customers)

#### 1. COMPLIANCE INFORMATION

Product Name: AV Surround Receiver Model Number: SR5007

This product complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this product may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this product must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation. Marantz America, LLC. (a D&M Holdings Company) 100 Corporate Drive. Mahwah, NJ, 07430, U.S.A.

Tel. (630) 741-0300

# 2. IMPORTANT NOTICE: DO NOT MODIFY THIS PRODUCT

This product, when installed as indicated in the instructions contained in this manual, meets FCC requirements. Modification not expressly approved by marantz may void your authority, granted by the FCC, to use the product.

#### 3. IMPORTANT

When connecting this product to network hub or router, use only a shielded STP or ScTP LAN cable which is available at retailer. Follow all installation instructions. Failure to follow instructions could void your authority, granted by the FCC, to use the product.

#### 4. NOTE

This product has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation.

This product generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this product does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the product OFF and ON, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the product into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- · Consult the local retailer authorized to distribute this type of product or an experienced radio/TV technician for help

#### For Canadian customers:

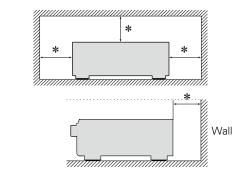
This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

#### □ NOTES ON USE

#### WARNINGS

#### • Avoid high temperatures.

- Allow for sufficient heat dispersion when installed in a rack.
- Handle the power cord carefully. Hold the plug when unplugging the cord.
- Keep the unit free from moisture, water, and dust.
- Unplug the power cord when not using the unit for long periods of time.
- Do not obstruct the ventilation holes.
- Do not let foreign objects into the unit.
- Do not let insecticides, benzene, and thinner come in contact with the unit.
- Never disassemble or modify the unit in any way.
- Ventilation should not be impeded by covering the ventilation openings with items, such as newspapers, tablecloths or curtains.
- Naked flame sources such as lighted candles should not be placed on the unit.
- Observe and follow local regulations regarding battery disposal.
- Do not expose the unit to dripping or splashing fluids.
- Do not place objects filled with liquids, such as vases, on the unit.
- Do not handle the mains cord with wet hands.
- When the switch is in the OFF (STANDBY) position, the equipment is not completely switched off from MAINS.
- The equipment shall be installed near the power supply so that the power supply is easily accessible.



□ CAUTIONS ON INSTALLATION

- \* For proper heat dispersal, do not install this unit in a confined space, such as a bookcase or similar enclosure.
  - More than 12 in. (0.3 m) is recommended.
  - Do not place any other equipment on this unit.

# **Getting started**

Thank you for purchasing this marantz product. To ensure proper operation, please read this owner's manual carefully before using the product. After reading them, be sure to keep them for future reference.

.4

#### Contents

| Getting started               |
|-------------------------------|
| Accessories2                  |
| Features                      |
| Cautions on handling <u>3</u> |

#### **Basic version**...

| Connections   | ····· <u>5</u> |
|---|----------------|
| Important information                                     | ····· <u>5</u> |
| Connecting an HDMI-compatible device                      | 7              |
| Connecting an HDMI-incompatible device                    |                |
| Connecting a device with a multi-channel output connector |                |
| Connecting a external power amplifier                     |                |
| Connecting to a home network (LAN)                        |                |
| Connecting the power cord                                 | 26             |
| Setup   |                |
| Set up speakers (Audyssey <sup>®</sup> Setup)             |                |
| Making the network settings (Network)                     |                |
| Playback (Basic operation)                                |                |
| Important information                                     |                |
| Playing a Blu-ray Disc player/DVD player                  |                |
| Playing a CD player                                       |                |
| Playing an iPod-  |                |
| Playing a USB memory device                               |                |
| Listening to FM broadcasts                                |                |
| Network contents  |                |
| Listening to internet radio                               |                |
|   |                |
| Playing back files stored on a PC and NAS                 | <u>53</u>      |
| Using online services                                     |                |
| Convenient functions                                      |                |
| AirPlay function  |                |
| Selecting a listening mode (Sound Mode)                   |                |
| Selecting a listening mode                                | ··· <u>71</u>  |

#### Advanced version

| Installation/connection/setup of speakers (Advanced) ······ | ····· <u>77</u>          |
|---|--------------------------|
| Speaker installation  | ····· <u>77</u>          |
| Speaker connection  | ····· <u>79</u>          |
| Set up speakers   | ····· <u>87</u>          |
| Connections (Advanced connection)                           | <u>89</u>                |
| Connecting the REMOTE CONTROL connectors                    | <u>89</u>                |
| Connecting an external control device                       |                          |
| Playback (Advanced operation)                               | <u>91</u>                |
| HDMI control function                                       | <u>91</u>                |
| Sleep timer function  | <u>92</u>                |
| Web control function  |                          |
| Dual backup memory function                                 | <u>95</u>                |
| Panel lock function   |                          |
| Remote lock function  | ····· <u>96</u>          |
| Various memory functions                                    | <u>97</u>                |
| Playback in ZONE2 (Separate room)                           | <u>98</u>                |
| Audio output ·····  | <u>98</u>                |
| Playback  | <u>98</u>                |
| Sleep timer function  | <u>99</u>                |
| How to make detailed settings                               | 100                      |
| Menu map ·····  | <u>100</u>               |
| Examples of menu screen displays                            | ··· <u>102</u>           |
| Examples of menu  |                          |
| Inputting characters  | ··· <u>104</u>           |
| Audio   |                          |
|   | 111                      |
| Video   |                          |
|   |                          |
| Video   | <u>116</u>               |
| Video<br>Inputs   | <u>116</u><br><u>120</u> |

#### Informations.

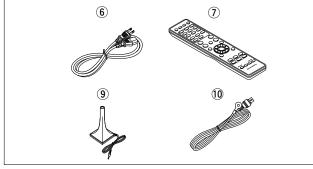
| <u></u>  |
|--|
| Part names and functions   |
| Front panel······ <u>135</u>                                     |
| Display <u>136</u>   |
| Rear panel······   |
| Remote control unit  |
| Other information <u>140</u>                                     |
| Trademark information <u>140</u>                                 |
| Surround   |
| Relationship between video signals and monitor output <u>145</u> |
| Explanation of terms <u>147</u>                                  |
| Troubleshooting  |
| Resetting the microprocessor <u>154</u>                          |
| Specifications   |

134

# Accessories

#### Check that the following parts are supplied with the product.

| 1) Getting Started              | 1 |
|---------------------------------|---|
| 2 CD-ROM (Owner's manual)       |   |
| ③ Safety Instructions           | 1 |
| ④ Warranty card (for USA)       |   |
| 5 Warranty card (for CANADA)    |   |
| 6 Power cord                    |   |
| ⑦ Remote control unit (RC017SR) | 1 |
| 8 R03/AAA batteries             | 2 |
| (9) Setup microphone (ACM1HB)   | 1 |
| 10 FM indoor antenna            | 1 |
|                                 |   |



# **Features**

# With a discrete-circuit configuration, the power amplifier provides identical quality for all 7 channels (100 W x 7ch, 8 $\Omega$ )

The unit is equipped with a power amplifier that reproduces highfidelity sound in sound mode with equal quality and power for all channels, true to the original sound.

The power amplifier circuit adopts a discrete-circuit configuration that achieves high-quality surround sound reproduction.

# Supports internet radio, music, and photograph streaming

### Supports AirPlay<sup>®</sup> (mpage 69)

You can enjoy a wide variety of content, including listening to Internet radio, playing the audio files stored on your PC, and displaying on a TV the photographs stored on your PC. This unit also supports AirPlay that lets you stream your music library from an iPhone, iPad, iPod touch or iTunes.

# Compatible with "marantz Remote App" for performing basic operations of the unit with an iPad, iPhone or Android smartphone\*1

"marantz Remote App" is application software that allows you to perform basic operations with an iPad, iPhone, Android smartphone or Android tablet such as turning the unit ON/OFF, controlling the volume, and switching the source.

\*1 Download "marantz Remote App" from iTunes<sup>®</sup> App Store. The unit needs to be connected to a LAN and the iPhone/iPod touch needs to be connected to the same network by Wi-Fi (wireless LAN).

# "Setup Assistant", providing easy-to-follow setup instructions

First select the language when prompted. Then simply follow the instructions displayed on the TV screen to set up the speakers, network, etc.

#### Easy to use, Graphical User Interface

This unit is equipped with an easy to see "Graphical User Interface" that uses menu displays and levels. The use of level displays increases operability of the this unit.

# HDMI connectors enable connection to various digital AV devices (input: 6, output: 1)

The unit is equipped with 6 HDMI input connectors for connecting devices with HDMI connectors, such as a Blu-ray Disc player, game machine, HD digital camcorder, etc.

# Supports HDMI (3D, ARC, Deep Color, "x.v.Color", Auto Lip Sync, 4K) and HDMI control function ((2) page 7)

In addition to HDMI 3D and ARC (Audio Return Channel) functions, this unit supports the video pass-through function, which outputs video to TV without changing the video quality when video signals of 4K (3840  $\times$  2160 pixels) are input, and the GUI overlay function, which overlays the menu screen (GUI) on the 4K video screen.

#### Features

# Digital video processor up-scales analog video signals (SD resolution) to 4K

This unit is equipped with the 4K video upscaling function, which allows for outputting analogue or SD (standard video quality) video to HDMI at 4K ( $3840 \times 2160$  pixels). This enables the unit and a TV connected with a single HDMI cable and any video source to be reproduced precisely with HD level of quality.

# Direct play for iPod<sup>®</sup> and iPhone<sup>®</sup> via USB ( $\bigcirc$ page 19)

Music data from an iPod can be played back if you connect the USB cable supplied with the iPod via the USB port of this unit, and also an iPod can be controlled with the remote control unit for this unit.

#### M-XPort (marantz-eXtension Port) (marantz-eXtension Port)

This unit is equipped with the M-XPort, a marantz original innovation that provides outstanding expandability. You can connect the Wireless Receiver RX101 (sold separately) to this port.

# **Cautions on handling**

#### Before turning the power on

Check once again that all connections are correct and that there are no problems with the connection cables.

 Power is supplied to some of the circuitry even when the unit is set to the standby mode. When going on vacation or leaving home for long periods of time, be sure to unplug the power cord from the power outlet.

#### • About condensation

If there is a major difference in temperature between the inside of the unit and the surroundings, condensation (dew) may form on the operating parts inside the unit, causing the unit not to operate properly.

If this happens, let the unit sit for an hour or two with the power turned off and wait until there is little difference in temperature before using the unit.

#### Cautions on using mobile phones

Using a mobile phone near this unit may result in noise. If that occurs, move the mobile phone away from this unit when it is in use.

#### Moving the unit

Turn off the power and unplug the power cord from the power outlet. Next, disconnect the connection cables to other system units before moving the unit.

#### About care

- Wipe the cabinet and control panel clean with a soft cloth.
- Follow the instructions when using a chemical cleaner.
- Benzene, paint thinner or other organic solvents as well as insecticide may cause material changes and discoloration if brought into contact with the unit, and should therefore not be used.



# **Basic version**

Here, we explain the connections and basic operation methods for this unit.

- Connections 27 page 5
- Setup 🕼 page 27
- Playback (Basic operation) 2 page 34
- Selecting a listening mode (Sound Mode) 27 page 71

# **Connections**

# Important information

#### Make connections before using this unit.

To create a home theater that can play back higher quality video and audio by fully utilizing the capabilities of this unit and your video devices, connect this unit to each of your video devices with HDMI cables.

## **HDMI**-compatible device

If your video device does not support HDMI connections, use the following connection.

#### **HDMI**-incompatible device

This unit can change the source that is assigned to the DIGITAL AUDIO IN and COMPONENT VIDEO IN connectors.

You can change the source for connectors listed in **Input connector setting** within pages that describe connections for devices.

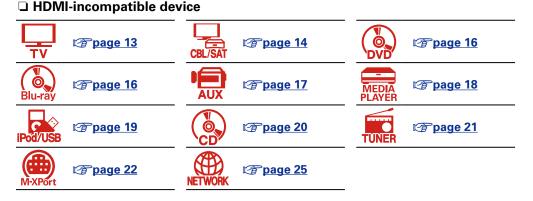
For details on assigning a source to connectors, see "Changing the source assigned to connectors" (<u>[] page 12</u>). For the setting method, see "Input Assign" (<u>[] page 117</u>).

#### NOTE

- The menu screen is only displayed on TV connected to this unit via HDMI. If your TV is connected to this unit via other video output connectors, perform menu operations while seeing the display on this unit.
- Do not plug in the power cord until all connections have been completed. However, when the "Setup Assistant" is running, follow the instructions in the "Setup Assistant" ( page 7) screen for making connections. (During "Setup Assistant" operation, the input/output connectors do not conduct current.)
- When running the "Setup Assistant" ( page 7), turn off the power supply of connected devices.
- When making connections, also refer to the operating instructions of the other devices being connected.
- Be sure to connect the left and right channels properly (left with left, right with right).
- Do not bundle power cords together with connection cables. Doing so can result in noise.

#### □ HDMI-compatible device





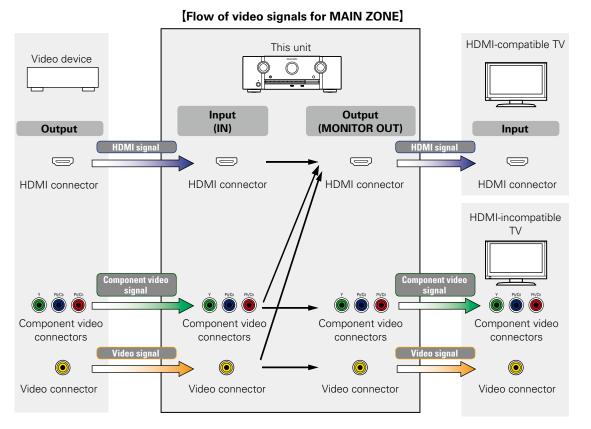
#### Others



# Converting input video signals for output (Video conversion function)

This unit is equipped with three types of video input connectors (HDMI, Component video and video) and three types of video output connectors (HDMI, Component video and video).

This function automatically converts various formats of video signals input to this unit into the formats used to output the video signals from this unit to a monitor.



For example, if you connect this unit to an HDMI-compatible TV with a single HDMI cable, this unit automatically converts input signals other than HDMI video signals to HDMI signals to output from the HDMI connector to the TV. This unit outputs only one type of video signals, so video signals output from this unit to the TV remain unchanged even if you switch to a device that outputs another type of video signals for playback. Therefore, you do not need to switch the video input on the TV. Furthermore, this unit converts the input analog video signals such as video and component video signals to high resolution digital HDMI video signals for output, improving the quality of the video. If your TV does not support HDMI connections, connect this unit to TV with analog video connectors. This unit can not convert HDMI input signals to analog video signals, so when inputting from an HDMI device, use component video or video input connectors.

#### Make Settings as Necessary

- If you do not want this unit to convert video signals automatically, use the following setting item to disable this function.
   "Video Conversion" (magaze 113)
- If you want to change the resolution of video signals output to the TV, use the following setting item to do so.
   **"Resolution"** (magnetized page 114)

## ø

- The video conversion function supports the NTSC, PAL, SECAM, NTSC 4.43, PAL-N, PAL-M and PAL-60 formats.
- Resolutions of HDMI-compatible TVs can be checked at "Video" "Monitor" (page 130).

#### NOTE

- The menu screen is only displayed on TV connected to this unit via HDMI. If your TV is connected to this unit via other video output connectors, perform menu operations while seeing the display on this unit.
- HDMI signals are digital. HDMI signals cannot be converted into analog signals.
- When a non-standard video signal from a game machine or some other source is input, the video conversion function might not operate.

# **Connecting an HDMI-compatible device**

You can connect up to seven HDMI-compatible devices (6-inputs/1-output) to the unit.

If the device connected to this unit is equipped with an HDMI connector, it is recommended to use HDMI connections. Connections with an HDMI cable offer the following benefits that can not be achieved with other connection methods.

#### • High quality playback by transmitting audio and video via digital signals

HDMI connections can transmit high definition video and high quality audio formats adopted by Bluray disc players (Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD, dts-HD, dts-HD Master Audio).

HDMI connections also convey information required for playback between devices. The information is used for copyright protection and TV resolution recognition, the ARC function, the HDMI control function, etc.

• Transmission of audio and video signals with a single HDMI cable

Previous connections require multiple audio and video cables, but HDMI connections require only a single HDMI cable to transmit audio and video signals. This allows wires in a home theater system, which tend to be complicated, to be more organized.

• Mutual control through the HDMI control function (2 page 91)

This unit and the HDMI device connected via HDMI can be linked to perform operations such as power control, volume control, and input source switching.

• Other video and audio functions, such as 3D video playback, Content Type, the ARC function, are supported (page 11).

# ø

- There is more than one version of HDMI standard. The supported functions and the performance vary according to the version. This unit complies with the HDMI standard, supporting the ARC and 3D playback functions. To enjoy these functions, the HDMI device connected to this unit also needs to use the same version of the standard. For the version of the HDMI standard on the device connected to this unit, see the device's manual.
- Some TVs do not support audio input via HDMI connections. For details, see your TV's manual.

Before connecting this unit to TV via HDMI connections (page 8)

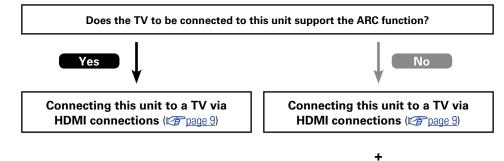
- Connecting this unit to a TV via HDMI connections (
  <a href="mailto:mailto:mailto:page9">mailto:mail
- Connecting this unit to video devices via HDMI connections (
  <a href="https://www.selfattion.org">page 10</a>)

#### □ HDMI function (☞ page 11)

Settings related to HDMI connections (page 11)

# Before connecting this unit to TV via HDMI connections

There are 2 methods to connect HDMI-compatible TV to this unit. Use the connection method that suits your TV.



#### Connecting a TV (page 13)

For audio connections, use a method other than HDMI connections.

### □ About ARC (Audio Return Channel) function

This function plays TV audio on this unit by sending the TV audio signal to this unit via HDMI cable. If a TV without the ARC function is connected via HDMI connections, video signals of the playback device connected to this unit are transmitted to the TV, but this unit can not play back the audio from the TV. If you want to enjoy surround audio for TV program, a separate audio cable connection is required.

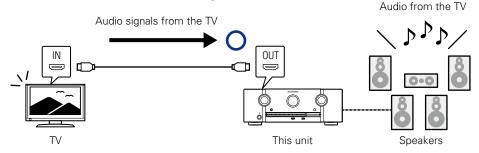
In contrast, if a TV with the ARC function is connected via HDMI connections, no audio cable connection is required. Audio signals from the TV can be input to this unit through the HDMI cable between this unit and the TV. This function allows you to enjoy surround playback on this unit for the TV.

# ø

When the ARC function is used, connect a device with a "Standard HDMI cable with Ethernet" or "High Speed HDMI cable with Ethernet" for HDMI.

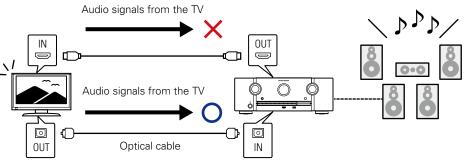
Refer to the owner's manual for your TV for details about TV connection and settings.

#### [Connection to a TV with the ARC function]



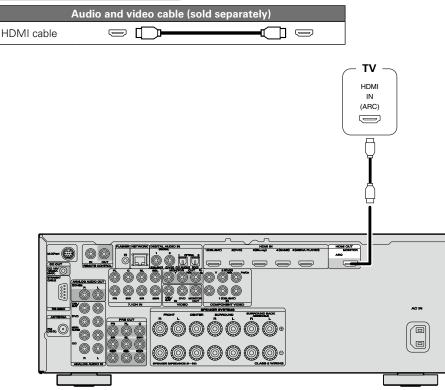
#### [Connection to a TV without the ARC function]

Audio from the TV



# Connecting this unit to a TV via HDMI connections

### **Cables used for connections**



# 

- Video signals are not output if the input video signals do not match the monitor's resolution. In this case, switch the Blu-ray Disc/DVD player's resolution to a resolution with which the monitor is compatible.
- When this unit and monitor are connected with an HDMI cable, if the monitor is not compatible with HDMI audio signal playback, only the video signals are output to the monitor. Make audio connections ((@page 13 "Connecting a TV").

#### NOTE

- The audio signal from the HDMI output connector (sampling frequency, number of channels, etc.) may be limited by the HDMI audio specifications of the connected device regarding permissible inputs.
- When connecting a TV that does not support the ARC function, an audio cable connection is required in addition to the HDMI cable. In this case, refer to "Connecting a TV" (page 13) for the connection method.

For the ARC function, see "About ARC (Audio Return Channel) function" (
page 8).

### Connecting to a device equipped with a DVI-D connector

The DVI-D (Digital Visual Interface) method is also used for video transmission via digital signals. This is developed mainly for computers, and some AV devices such as projectors are equipped with this interface. To output HDMI video signals to a DVI-D video input compatible device, use an HDMI/DVI conversion cable, which converts HDMI video signals to DVI signals.

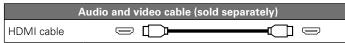
The DVI-D connector can transmit high quality digital signals, but the copy guard and other issues may hinder normal operations for some device combinations.

### NOTE

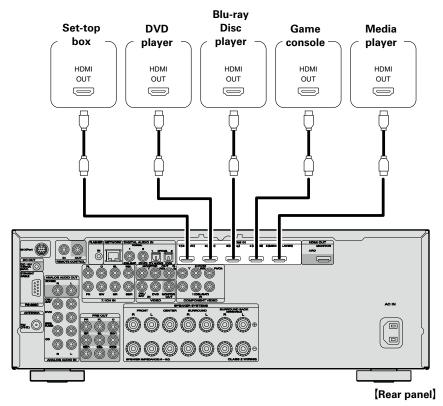
- No sound is output when connected to a device equipped with a DVI-D connector. Make audio connections as described in "Connecting a TV" (17 page 13).
- Signals cannot be output to DVI-D devices that do not support HDCP.
- Depending on the combination of devices, the video signals may not be output.

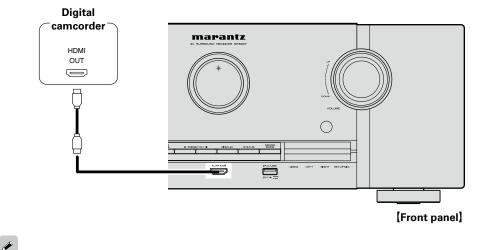
# Connecting this unit to video devices via HDMI connections

## **Cables used for connections**



• This interface allows transfer of digital video signals and digital audio signals over a single HDMI cable.





- When this unit is connected to other devices with HDMI cables, connect this unit and TV also with an HDMI cable.
- When connecting a device that supports Deep Color or 4K, please use a "High Speed HDMI cable" or "High Speed HDMI cable with Ethernet".
- Video signals are not output if the input video signals do not match the monitor's resolution. In this case, switch the Blu-ray Disc/DVD player's resolution to a resolution with which the monitor is compatible.

# **HDMI** function

This unit supports the following HDMI functions:

#### □ About 3D function

This unit supports input and output of 3D (3 dimensional) video signals of HDMI.

To play back 3D video, you need a TV and player that provide support for the HDMI 3D function and a pair of 3D glasses.

### NOTE

- When playing back 3D video, refer to the instructions provided in the manual of your playback device together with this manual.
- When playing back 3D video content, the menu screen or status display screen can be superimposed over the image. However, the menu screen or status display screen cannot be superimposed over certain 3D video content.
- If 3D video with no 3D information is input, the menu screen and status display on this unit are displayed over the playback video.
- If 2D video is converted to 3D video on the television, the menu screen and status display on this unit are not displayed correctly. To view the menu screen and status display on this unit correctly, turn the television setting that converts 2D video to 3D video off.

## □ About 4K function

This unit supports input and output of 4K ( $3840 \times 2160$  pixels) video signals of HDMI.

## ø

When a device supporting 4K is connected, use a cable compatible with "High Speed HDMI cable" or "High Speed HDMI cable with Ethernet".

# □ HDMI control function (<sup>™</sup> page 91)

This function allows you to operate external devices from the unit and operate the unit from external devices.

### NOTE

- The HDMI control function may not work depending on the device it is connected to and its settings.
- You cannot operate a TV or Blu-ray Disc player/DVD player that is not compatible with the HDMI control function.

### About Content Type

This function was added with the HDMI standard. It automatically makes settings suitable for the videooutput type (content information).

### NOTE

To enable the Content Type, set "Video Mode" to "Auto" (2 page 113).

# Deep Color ( **page 147**)

When a device supporting Deep Color is connected, use a cable compatible with "High Speed HDMI cable" or "High Speed HDMI cable with Ethernet".

# □ Auto Lip Sync (127 page 112, 147)

□ "x.v.Color", sYCC601 color, Adobe RGB color, Adobe YCC601 color (© page 147, 148)

### **High definition digital audio format**

# ARC (Audio Return Channel) ( page 8)

#### Copyright protection system

In order to play back digital video and audio such as BD-Video or DVD-Video via HDMI connection, both this unit and TV or the player need to support the copyright protection system known as HDCP (Highbandwidth Digital Content Protection System). HDCP is copyright protection technology comprised of data encryption and authentication of the connected AV devices. This unit supports HDCP.

• If a device that does not support HDCP is connected, video and audio are not output correctly. Read the owner's manual of your television or player for more information.

# **Settings related to HDMI connections**

Set as necessary. For details, see the respective reference pages.

# □ HDMI Setup (12)

Make settings for HDMI video/audio output.

- Auto Lip Sync
- HDMI Control
   Standby Source
- Power Off Control

- HDMI Audio Out
- Standby Source

#### NOTE

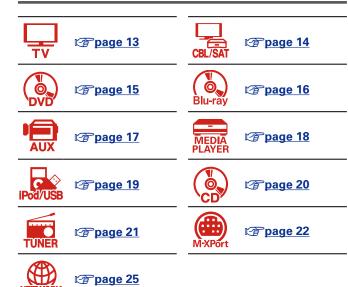
The audio signal input from the HDMI input connector can be output as an output signal from the HDMI output connector by setting the HDMI audio output destination to TV.

Audio signals input via the Analog/Coaxial/Optical input connectors cannot be output from the HDMI MONITOR output connector.

# **Connecting an HDMI-incompatible device**

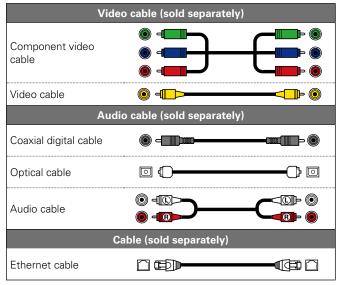
This section describes connections when your device does not support  $\mathsf{HDMI}$  connections.

# Connection methods for various devices



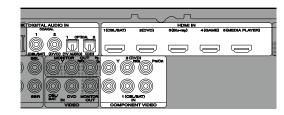
NETWORK

# **Cables used for connections**



# Changing the source assigned to connectors

This unit can change the source that is assigned to the DIGITAL AUDIO IN and COMPONENT VIDEO IN connectors.



Here, a connection to the Blu-ray disc player is taken as an example for explanation. The rear panel video input and digital audio input connectors do not have the input connector indication for Blu-ray disc players (Blu-ray). You can assign Blu-ray disc players to these connectors to use them for Blu-ray disc players. Select "Blu-ray" when switching functions on this unit to play back the source connected to these connectors.

□ How to change the source assigned to connectors (<sup>[2]</sup> page 117)

# **Connecting a TV**

- This section describes how to connect when your TV does not support HDMI connections. For instructions on HDMI connections, see "Connecting an HDMI-compatible device" (Transport Page 7).
- If the TV connected to this unit is equipped with an HDMI connector that supports ARC, digital audio signals from TV can be transmitted to this unit (page 8 "About ARC (Audio Return Channel) function"). The ARC function allows you to enjoy on this unit the audio from TV programs and HDMI devices directly connected to TV, without having to make a separate audio connection. For the ARC function, also see your TV's manual.
- To listen to TV audio through this device, use the optical digital connection.

# ø

For video connections, see "Converting input video signals for output (Video conversion function)" (rpage 6).

#### Audio connection

The following methods are available for connecting to this unit. Use either of the methods to make a connection.

# 1 DIGITAL AUDIO OPTICAL connector

#### DIGITAL AUDIO COAXIAL connector \*

When a multichannel audio (digital bit stream audio) is input, this unit decodes the audio to play back surround sound.

\* When making this type of connection, you must change the settings on this unit.

(C Input connector setting)

#### □ Video connection

The following methods are available for connecting to this unit. **Use either of the methods to make a connection**.

The numbers prefixed with connectors indicate the recommendation order. The smaller the number is, the higher playback quality is achieved.

#### **1** COMPONENT VIDEO OUT (MONITOR) connector

This makes an analog video connection. This connection method separates video signals into 3 signals for transmission based on color components, achieving the best quality video playback among analog video connections, with less signal degradation.

#### **2** VIDEO OUT (MONITOR) connector

This makes an analog video connection.

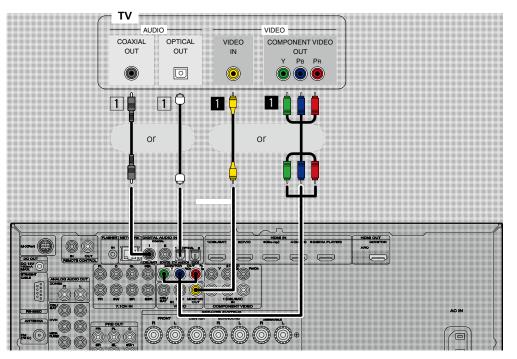
#### Input connector setting

When making the following connection, you must change the input connector settings.

#### **1** DIGITAL AUDIO COAXIAL connector

When connecting to connectors marked as 1, change "CBL/SAT" to "TV AUDIO".

For how to change, see "Input Assign" (mpage 117).



### NOTE

- The menu screen is only displayed on TV connected to this unit via HDMI. If your TV is connected to this unit via other video output connectors, perform menu operations while seeing the display on this unit.
- If you do not connect this unit to your TV via HDMI, do not make HDMI connections for video inputs from other video devices, either. For details see "Converting input video signals for output (Video conversion function)" (<u>page 6</u>).

# Connecting a set-top box (Satellite tuner/cable TV)

This section describes how to connect when your satellite tuner or cable TV does not support HDMI connections.

For instructions on HDMI connections, see "Connecting an HDMI-compatible device" (12 page 7).

#### **Audio connection**

The following methods are available for connecting to this unit. Use either of the methods to make a connection.

The numbers prefixed with connectors indicate the recommendation order. The smaller the number is, the higher playback quality is achieved.

# **DIGITAL AUDIO COAXIAL connector**

#### **DIGITAL AUDIO OPTICAL connector \***

When a multichannel audio (digital bit stream audio) is input, this unit decodes the audio to play back surround sound.

\* When making this type of connection, you must change the settings on this unit.

(C Input connector setting)

#### **2** AUDIO IN (CBL/SAT) connector

This makes an analog audio connection. This type of connection converts digital audio to analog audio, so the output audio may be degraded compared to connections 1.

#### Video connection

The following methods are available for connecting to this unit. Use either of the methods to make a connection.

The numbers prefixed with connectors indicate the recommendation order. The smaller the number is, the higher playback quality is achieved.

#### **1** COMPONENT VIDEO IN (CBL/SAT) connector

This makes an analog video connection. This connection method separates video signals into 3 signals for transmission based on color components, achieving the best quality video playback among analog video connections, with less signal degradation.

#### **2** VIDEO IN (CBL/SAT) connector

This makes an analog video connection.

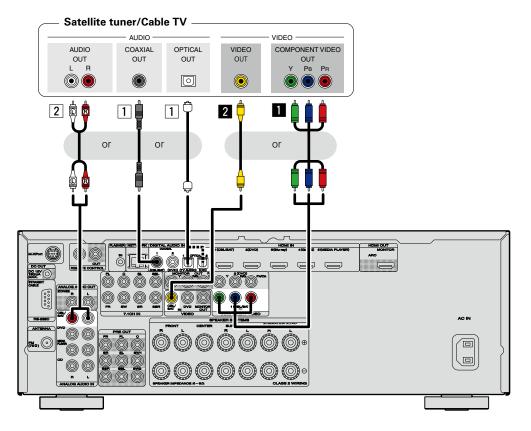
#### Input connector setting

When making the following connection, you must change the input connector settings.

#### **1** DIGITAL AUDIO OPTICAL connector

When connecting to connectors marked as 1, change "TV AUDIO" to "CBL/SAT".

For how to change, see "Input Assign" (mpage 117).



# **Connecting a DVD player**

This section describes how to connect when your DVD player does not support HDMI connections. For instructions on HDMI connections, see "Connecting an HDMI-compatible device" ((Page 7).

#### **Audio connection**

The following methods are available for connecting to this unit. Use either of the methods to make a connection.

The numbers prefixed with connectors indicate the recommendation order. The smaller the number is, the higher playback quality is achieved.

#### 1 DIGITAL AUDIO COAXIAL connector DIGITAL AUDIO OPTICAL connector \*

When a multichannel audio (digital bit stream audio) is input, this unit decodes the audio to play back surround sound.

\* When making this type of connection, you must change the settings on this unit.

(C Input connector setting)

#### **2** AUDIO IN (DVD) connector

This makes an analog audio connection. This type of connection converts digital audio to analog audio, so the output audio may be degraded compared to connections 1.

#### □ Video connection

The following methods are available for connecting to this unit. Use either of the methods to make a connection.

The numbers prefixed with connectors indicate the recommendation order. The smaller the number is, the higher playback quality is achieved.

#### **1** COMPONENT VIDEO IN (DVD) connector

This makes an analog video connection. This connection method separates video signals into 3 signals for transmission based on color components, achieving the best quality video playback among analog video connections, with less signal degradation.

#### **2** VIDEO IN (DVD) connector

This makes an analog video connection.

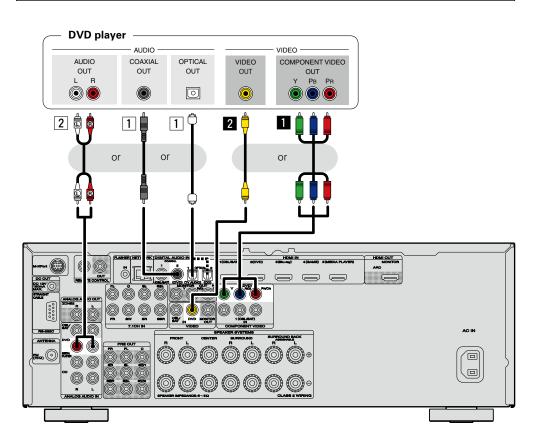
#### Input connector setting

When making the following connection, you must change the input connector settings.

#### **1** DIGITAL AUDIO OPTICAL connector

When connecting to connectors marked as 1, change "TV AUDIO" to "DVD".

For how to change, see "Input Assign" (page 117).



#### Connecting an HDMI-incompatible device

# **Connecting a Blu-ray Disc player**

This section describes how to connect when your Blu-ray disc player does not support HDMI connections. For instructions on HDMI connections, see "Connecting an HDMI-compatible device" (Cp page 7).

#### Audio connection

The following methods are available for connecting to this unit. Use either of the methods to make a connection.

#### DIGITAL AUDIO COAXIAL connector DIGITAL AUDIO OPTICAL connector

When a multichannel audio (digital bit stream audio) is input, this unit decodes the audio to play back surround sound. However, digital bit stream audio signals for HD audios from Blu-ray disc players (such as Dolby Digital Plus and dts-HD) can not be transmitted.

When making this type of connection, you must change the settings on this unit.

(C Input connector setting)

#### Video connection

The following methods are available for connecting to this unit. Use either of the methods to make a connection.

#### **1** COMPONENT VIDEO IN connector

This makes an analog video connection. This connection method separates video signals into 3 signals for transmission based on color components, achieving the best quality video playback among analog video connections, with less signal degradation.

When making this type of connection, you must change the settings on this unit.

(CF Input connector setting)

#### Input connector setting

When making the following connection, you must change the input connector settings.

#### **1 DIGITAL AUDIO COAXIAL connector**

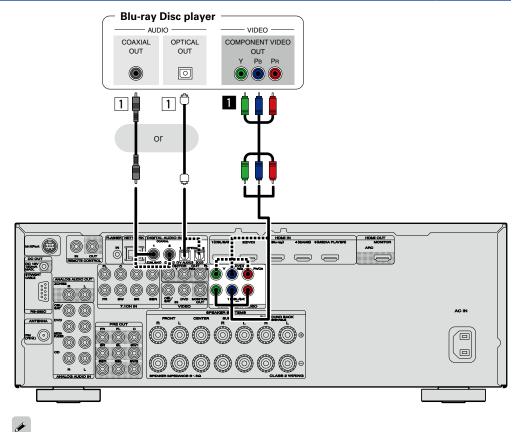
When connecting to connectors marked as 1, change "CBL/SAT" to "Blu-ray". **DIGITAL AUDIO OPTICAL connector** 

When connecting to connectors marked as 1, change "TV AUDIO" to "Blu-ray".

#### COMPONENT VIDEO IN connector

When connecting to connectors marked as 1, change "CBL/SAT" to "Blu-ray".

For how to change, see "Input Assign" (page 117).



When you want to play back HD Audio (Dolby TrueHD, DTS-HD, Dolby Digital Plus, DTS Express) and Multichannel PCM with this unit, use an HDMI connection (<u>Page 7</u> "Connecting an HDMI-compatible device").

# **Connecting a digital camcorder**

This section describes how to connect when your digital camcorder does not support HDMI connections. For instructions on HDMI connections, see "Connecting an HDMI-compatible device" (127 page 7).

#### **Audio connection**

The following methods are available for connecting to this unit. Use either of the methods to make a connection.

The numbers prefixed with connectors indicate the recommendation order. The smaller the number is, the higher playback quality is achieved.

#### 1 DIGITAL AUDIO COAXIAL connector DIGITAL AUDIO OPTICAL connector

When a multichannel audio (digital bit stream audio) is input, this unit decodes the audio to play back surround sound.

When making this type of connection, you must change the settings on this unit.

(Imput connector setting)

#### **2** AUDIO IN (AUX) connector

This makes an analog audio connection. This type of connection converts digital audio to analog audio, so the output audio may be degraded compared to connections 1.

#### □ Video connection

The following methods are available for connecting to this unit.

#### **COMPONENT VIDEO IN connector**

This makes an analog video connection. This connection method separates video signals into 3 signals for transmission based on color components, achieving the best quality video playback among analog video connections, with less signal degradation.

When making this type of connection, you must change the settings on this unit.

(C Input connector setting)

#### Input connector setting

When making the following connection, you must change the input connector settings.

#### **1** DIGITAL AUDIO COAXIAL connector

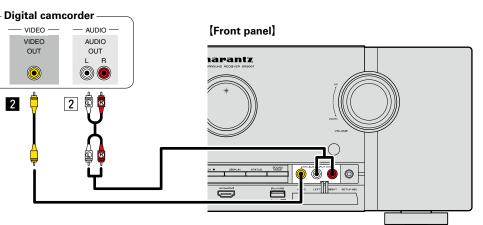
When connecting to connectors marked as 1, change "CBL/SAT" to "AUX". DIGITAL AUDIO OPTICAL connector

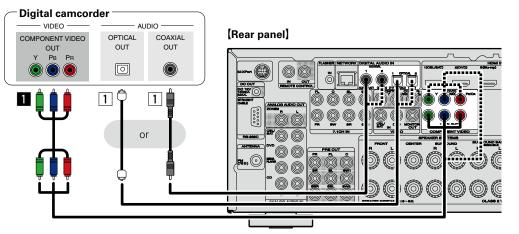
When connecting to connectors marked as 1, change "TV AUDIO" to "AUX".

#### COMPONENT VIDEO IN connector

When connecting to connectors marked as 1, change "CBL/SAT" to "AUX".

For how to change, see "Input Assign" (mpage 117).





#### 

You can enjoy games by connecting a game machine via the AUX input connector. In this case, select the input source to "AUX".

NOTE

When a non-standard video signal from a game machine or some other source is input, the video conversion function (page 6) might not operate. In this case, use the monitor output of the same connector as the input.

# **Connecting a media player**

This section describes how to connect when your media player does not support HDMI connections. For instructions on HDMI connections, see "Connecting an HDMI-compatible device" (*ppage 7*).

#### **Audio connection**

The following methods are available for connecting to this unit. Use either of the methods to make a connection.

The numbers prefixed with connectors indicate the recommendation order. The smaller the number is, the higher playback quality is achieved.

#### 1 DIGITAL AUDIO COAXIAL connector DIGITAL AUDIO OPTICAL connector

When a multichannel audio (digital bit stream audio) is input, this unit decodes the audio to play back surround sound.

When making this type of connection, you must change the settings on this unit.

(C Input connector setting)

#### **2** AUDIO IN (MEDIA PLAYER) connector

This makes an analog audio connection. This type of connection converts digital audio to analog audio, so the output audio may be degraded compared to connections 1.

#### □ Video connection

The following methods are available for connecting to this unit. **Use either of the methods to make a connection.** 

#### **1** COMPONENT VIDEO IN connector

This makes an analog video connection. This connection method separates video signals into 3 signals for transmission based on color components, achieving the best quality video playback among analog video connections, with less signal degradation.

When making this type of connection, you must change the settings on this unit.

(C Input connector setting)

#### Input connector setting

When making the following connection, you must change the input connector settings.

#### **1** DIGITAL AUDIO COAXIAL connector

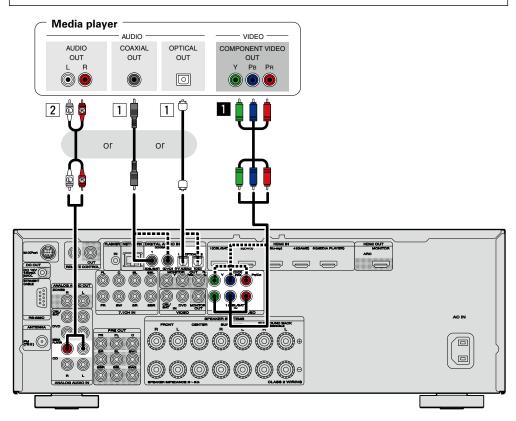
When connecting to connectors marked as 1, change "CBL/SAT" to "MEDIA PLAYER". **DIGITAL AUDIO OPTICAL connector** 

When connecting to connectors marked as 1, change "TV AUDIO" to "MEDIA PLAYER".

#### **COMPONENT VIDEO IN connector**

When connecting to connectors marked as 1, change "CBL/SAT" to "MEDIA PLAYER".

For how to change, see "Input Assign" (page 117).

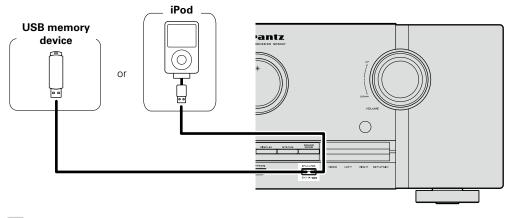


# Connecting an iPod or USB memory device to the iPod/USB port

- You can enjoy music stored on an iPod or USB memory device.
- For operating instructions see "Playing an iPod" (12 page 36) or "Playing a USB memory device" (Ep page 39).

# **Cables used for connections**

To connect an iPod to this unit, use the USB cable supplied with the iPod.



# **A**

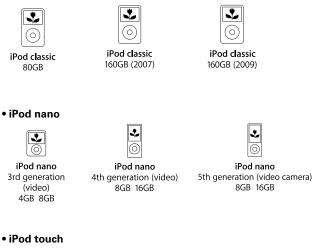
marantz does not guarantee that all USB memory devices will operate or receive power. When using a portable USB connection type HDD of the kind to which an AC adapter can be connected to supply power, use the AC adapter.

#### NOTE

- USB memory devices will not work via a USB hub.
- It is not possible to use this unit by connecting the unit's iPod/USB port to a PC via a USB cable.
- Do not use an extension cable when connecting a USB memory device. This may cause radio interference with other devices.
- When connecting an iPhone to this unit, keep the iPhone at least 20 cm away from this unit. If the iPhone is kept closer to this unit and a telephone call is received by the iPhone, noise may be output from this device.
- If the iPod is connected using an iPod cable (commercially available) that is longer than 6.6 ft (2 m), sound may not be played correctly. In this case, use a genuine iPod cable, or a cable that is shorter than 3.3 ft (1 m).

# Supported iPod models

#### • iPod classic





8GB 16GB 32GB

8GB 16GB

1st generation

8GB 16GB 32GB

• iPhone

4GB 8GB 16GB

iPod touch 3rd generation

32GB 64GB

\*

 $\bigcirc$ 

iPod classic

**\*** 0

iPod nano

8GB 16GB



iPod touch 4th generation 8GB 32GB 64GB

iPod nano

6th generation 8GB 16GB



iPhone 3GS

8GB 16GB 32GB



8GB 16GB 32GB 16GB 32GB 64GB

(as of April 2012)

# **Connecting a CD player**

You can enjoy CD sound.

#### □ Audio connection

The following methods are available for connecting to this unit. Use either of the methods to make a connection.

The numbers prefixed with connectors indicate the recommendation order. The smaller the number is, the higher playback quality is achieved.

#### 1 DIGITAL AUDIO OPTICAL connector DIGITAL AUDIO COAXIAL connector \*

When a multichannel audio (digital bit stream audio) is input, this unit decodes the audio to play back surround sound.

\* When making this type of connection, you must change the settings on this unit.

(
 Input connector setting)

#### **2** AUDIO IN (CD) connector

This makes an analog audio connection. This type of connection converts digital audio to analog audio, so the output audio may be degraded compared to connections 1.

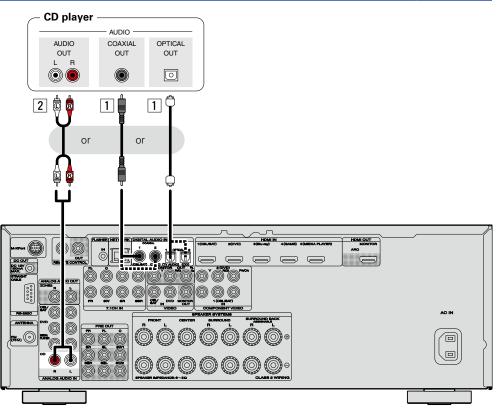
#### Input connector setting

When making the following connection, you must change the input connector settings.

#### **1** DIGITAL AUDIO COAXIAL connector

When connecting to connectors marked as 1, change "CBL/SAT" to "CD".

For how to change, see "Input Assign" (mpage 117).



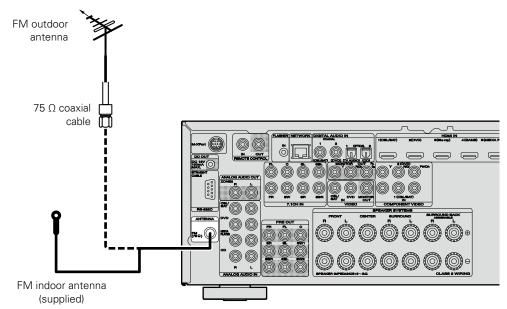
# **Connecting an FM antenna**

- Connect the FM antenna supplied with the unit to enjoy listening to radio broadcasts.
- After connecting the antenna and receiving a broadcast signal (<u>Ppage 42</u> "Listening to FM broadcasts"), fix the antenna with tape in a position where the noise level becomes minimal.

#### NOTE

- Do not connect two FM antennas simultaneously.
- If you are unable to receive a good broadcast signal, we recommend installing an outdoor antenna. For details, inquire at the retail store where you purchased the unit.

Direction of broadcasting station



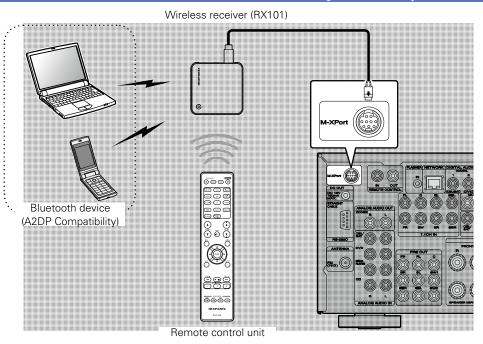
#### Connecting an HDMI-incompatible device

# **Connecting a wireless receiver (RX101)**

- You can connect a wireless receiver (RX101, sold separately) to play back music on your Bluetooth device with this unit.
- To do this, switch the input source to "M-XPort" (127 page 34 "Selecting the input source").
- This unit supports the A2DP standard of the Bluetooth profile.
- See also the manuals for your wireless receiver and Bluetooth device.

# 

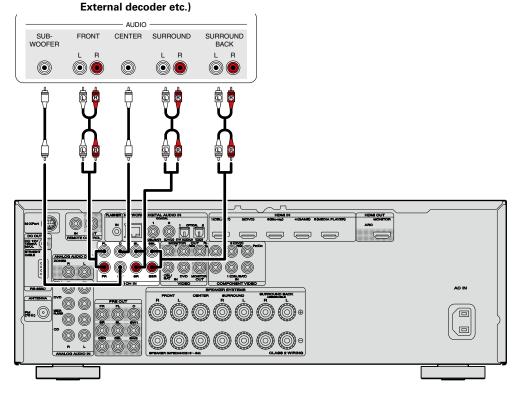
- When connecting your Bluetooth device to the wireless receiver for the first time, paring is necessary. Once paring is completed, the communication between your Bluetooth device and the wireless receiver can be established just by connecting them. Paring is necessary for each Bluetooth device.
- You can also use the wireless receiver as an IR receiver. In this case, disable the remote control signal receiving function (Page 96 "Remote lock function").



# **Connecting a device with a multi-channel output connector**

- You can connect this unit to an external device fitted with multi-channel sound audio output connectors to enjoy music and video.
- To play analog signals input from 7.1CH IN connectors, set "Input Mode" (page 119) to "7.1CH IN".
- The video signal can be connected in the same way as a Blu-ray Disc player / DVD player (<u>Page 15</u> "Connecting a DVD player", <u>Page 16</u> "Connecting a Blu-ray Disc player").
- When a device is connected to the SBL/SBR terminal of 7.1CH IN connectors, set "Assign Mode" (3 page 121) to "Surround Back".

#### Devices with a multi-channel output connector (Blu-ray Disc player, DVD player,



# **Connecting a external power amplifier**

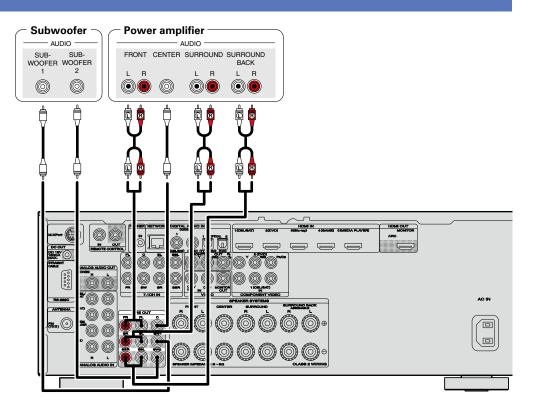
- You can use this unit as a pre-amp by connecting a commercially available power amp to the PRE OUT connector. Adding a power amp to each of the channels provides an even greater sound presence.
- Select the terminal to use and connect the device.

# ø

- When using just one surround back speaker, connect it to the left channel (L) terminal.
- Use the volume control on the subwoofer to control subwoofer volume.
- If the subwoofer volume sounds low, use the volume control provided on the subwoofer to adjust the volume.

### NOTE

When external power amplifier have been connected to PRE OUT terminals, do not connect the speakers to the speaker terminals.



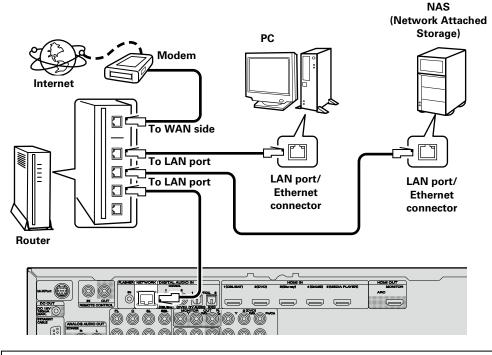
# Connecting to a home network (LAN)

You can connect this unit to your home network (LAN) to perform various types of playbacks and operations as follows. Make network connections for this unit by carefully reading information on this page.

- Playback of network audio such as the Internet radio and music servers
- Playback of music from online services
- AirPlay
- Operations on this unit via the network

In addition, when an updated firmware becomes available for improving this unit, the update information is delivered from us to this unit over the network. You can then download the latest firmware. For more information, on the menu, select "Update" (\*\*\*\* page 131).

Network settings are necessary. See "Network" on the menu (page 124) for more information on network setting.



For connections to the Internet, contact an ISP (Internet Service Provider) or a computer shop.

# **Required system**

# □ Broadband internet connection

#### 🗆 Modem

Device that connects to the broadband circuit and conducts communications on the Internet. A type that is integrated with a router is also available.

### 🗆 Router

When using this unit, we recommend you use a router equipped with the following functions: • Built-in DHCP server

- This function automatically assigns IP addresses on the LAN.
- Built-in 100BASE-TX switch When connecting multiple devices, we recommend a switching hub with a speed of 100 Mbps or greater.

#### □ Ethernet cable (CAT-5 or greater recommended)

- Use only a shielded STP or ScTP LAN cable which is available at retailer.
- The normal shielded-type Ethernet cable is recommended. If a flat-type cable or unshielded-type cable is used, other devices could be affected by noise.

- If you have an Internet provider contract for a line on which network settings are made manually, make the settings at "Network" (127 page 124).
- With this unit, it is possible to use the DHCP and Auto IP functions to make the network settings automatically.
- When using this unit with the broadband router's DHCP function enabled, this unit automatically performs the IP address setting and other settings.

When using this unit connected to a network with no DHCP function, make the settings for the IP address, etc., at "Network" (Epage 124).

• When setting manually, check the setting contents with the network administrator.

# NOTE

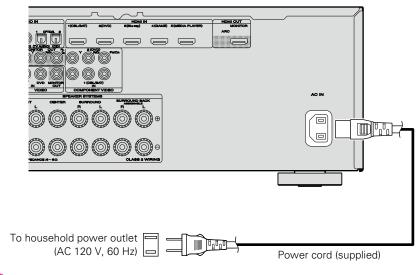
• A contract with an ISP is required to connect to the Internet.

No additional contract is needed if you already have a broadband connection to the Internet.

- The types of routers that can be used depend on the ISP. Contact an ISP or a computer shop for details.
- marantz assumes no responsibility whatsoever for any communication errors or troubles resulting from customer's network environment or connected devices.
- This unit is not compatible with PPPoE. A PPPoEcompatible router is required if you have a contract for a type of line set by PPPoE.
- Do not connect an NETWORK connector directly to the LAN port/ Ethernet connector on your computer.
- To listen to audio streaming, use a router that supports audio streaming.

# Connecting the power cord

After completing all the connections, insert the power plug into the power outlet.



NOTE

- Do not plug in the power cord until all connections have been completed.
- Do not bundle power cords together with connection cables. Doing so can result in humming or noise.

# Setup

Here, we explain "Audyssey<sup>®</sup> Setup", which allows you to automatically make the optimal settings for your speakers, and "Network", which allows you to connect this unit to a home network (LAN).

This unit lets you play via your home network (LAN) music files stored on a computer and music content such as that from Internet radio.

#### **Speaker connection** (<u>Page 79</u>)

- □ Set up speakers (Audyssey<sup>®</sup> Setup) (<sup>™</sup> page 27)
- Making the network settings (Network)
   (
   <u>page 33</u>)

Playback (Basic operation) (<u>Page 34</u>)

Selecting a listening mode (Sound Mode) (page 71)

Playback (Advanced operation) (page 91)



# Set up speakers (Audyssey® Setup)

The acoustic characteristics of the connected speakers and listening room are measured and the optimum settings are made automatically. This is called "Audyssey<sup>®</sup> Setup".

To perform measurement, place the setup microphone in multiple locations all around the listening area. For best results, we recommend you measure in six or more positions, as shown in the illustration (up to eight positions).

- When performing Audyssey<sup>®</sup> Setup, Audyssey MultEQ<sup>®</sup> XT/ Audyssey Dynamic EQ<sup>®</sup>/Audyssey Dynamic Volume<sup>®</sup> functions become active (provide 109).
- To set up the speakers manually, use "Speakers" (127 page 120) on the menu.

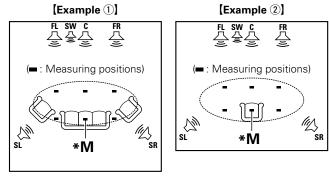
#### NOTE

- Make the room as quiet as possible. Background noise can disrupt the room measurements. Close windows and turn off the power on electronic devices (TVs, radios, air conditioners, fluorescent lights, etc.). The measurements could be affected by the sounds emitted by such devices.
- During the measurement process, place cell phones outside the listening room. Cell phone signals could disrupt the measurements.
- $\bullet$  Do not unplug the setup microphone from the main unit until  ${\sf Audyssey}^{I\!\!R}$  Setup is completed.
- Do not stand between the speakers and setup microphone or allow obstacles in the path while the measurements are being made. This will cause inaccurate readings.
- During the measurement process, loud test sounds may be played, but this is part of normal operation. If there is background noise in room, these test signals will increase in volume.
- Operating **VOLUME \\$V** on the remote control unit or **VOLUME** on the main unit during the measurements will cancel the measurements.
- Measurement cannot be performed when headphones are connected. Unplug the headphones before performing Audyssey<sup>®</sup> Setup.

# About setup microphone placement

GUI

- Measurements are performed by placing the setup microphone successively at multiple positions throughout the entire listening area, as shown in **[Example** ①]. For best results, we recommend you measure in six or more positions, as shown in the illustration (up to eight positions).
- Even if the listening environment is small as shown in **[Example** (2)], measuring at multiple points throughout the listening environment results in more effective correction.



- FL Front speaker (L)FR Front speaker (R)C Center speaker
- SW Subwoofer
- SL Surround speaker (L)
- **SR** Surround speaker (R)

### About the main listening position (\*M)

The main listening position is the position where listeners would normally sit or where one would normally sit alone within the listening environment. Before starting Audyssey<sup>®</sup> Setup, place the setup microphone in the main listening position. Audyssey MultEQ<sup>®</sup> XT uses the measurements from this position to calculate speaker distance, level, polarity, and the optimum crossover value for the subwoofer.

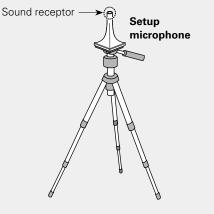


V

# Prepare the included setup microphone

#### Mount the setup microphone on a tripod or stand and place it in the main listening position.

When placing the setup microphone, adjust the height of the sound receptor to the level of the listener's ear.



#### ø

If you do not have a tripod or stand, set up the microphone on, for example, a seat without a back.

#### NOTE

- Do not hold the setup microphone in your hand during measurements.
- Avoid placing the setup microphone close to a seat back or wall as sound reflections may give inaccurate results.

2

## Set up the subwoofer

If using a subwoofer capable of the following adjustments, set up the subwoofer as shown below.

For details, see your subwoofer's manual.

#### **When using a subwoofer with a direct mode**

Set the direct mode to "On" and disable the volume adjustment and crossover frequency setting.

#### **U** When using a subwoofer without a direct mode

- Make the following settings:
- Volume : "12 o'clock position"
- Crossover frequency : "Maximum/Highest Frequency"
- Low pass filter : "Off"
- Standby mode : "Off"

#### NOTE

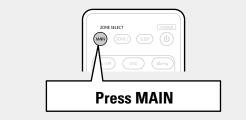
When using 2 subwoofers at the same time, before starting Audyssey<sup>®</sup> Setup. adjust the volume of the subwoofers by using "Subwoofer Level" ( $\fbox{page 107}$ ) from the menu. You cannot set the volume for individual subwoofers.

# **3** Set up the remote control unit

**Set up the zone mode** 

Press **MAIN** to switch the zone mode to the MAIN ZONE.

MAIN lights.



# Preparation

**4** Connect the setup microphone to the SETUP MIC jack of this unit.



• Here, we explain setup using the example of 7.1-channel speaker playback using surround back speakers.

For setup of surround back speaker systems other than 7.1-channels, follows steps 3 to 6 in "Set up "Amp Assign"" (27 page 87).

If unused channels are set with "Channel Select", measuring time can be shortened. For setting, perform steps 7 to 12 of "Set up "Channel Select"" (127 page 88).

# **Preparation** (Continued)



**6** Select "Next" and then press ENTER.



# **Detection & Measurement (Main)**

 This step automatically checks the speaker configuration and speaker size, and calculates the channel level, distance, and crossover frequency.

It also corrects distortion in the listening area.

#### **7** Select "Begin Test" and then press ENTER.

- When measuring begins, a test tone is output from each speaker.
- Measurement requires several minutes.

# **8** The detected speakers are displayed.

• The illustration below shows an example of when the front speakers, center speaker, subwoofer and surround speakers have been detected.

| Audyssey<br>Speaker Detectio                              |  |   | AUDYSS<br>MUS<br>DYNAMIC V | TEQ XT |   |
|---|--|---|----------------------------|--------|---|
| Front<br>Center<br>Subwoofer<br>Surround<br>Surround Back | :Yes<br>:Yes<br>:Yes<br>:Yes<br>2spkrs | ľ |                            |        | 1 |
| Repeat Last Te  | est                                    |   |                            | Next   |   |

#### NOTE

If a connected speaker is not displayed, the speaker may not be connected correctly. Check the speaker connection.

# **9** Select "Next" and then press ENTER.

#### NOTE

#### If "Caution!" is displayed on TV screen:

Go to "Error messages" (Eppage 32). Check any related items, and perform the necessary procedures. If the problem is resolved, return and restart "Audyssey<sup>®</sup> Setup".

#### Going back to the previous screen

Select "Back" and then press ENTER.

#### When measuring has stopped

Press **BACK** to display the popup screen.
 Press ⊲ to select "Yes", and then press **ENTER**.

#### Setting up the speakers again

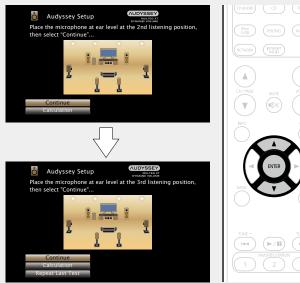
Repeat the operation from step 4.

# Measurement (2nd – 8th)

- In this step, you will perform measurements at multiple positions (two to eight positions) other than the main listening position.
- Just one position can be measured but measuring multiple positions increases the accuracy of the correction of acoustic distortion within the listening area.

# **10** Move the setup microphone to position 2, select "Continue", and then press ENTER.

The measurement of the second position starts. Measurements can be made in up to eight positions.



#### ø

- To skip measuring the third and subsequent listening position, use  $\Delta\nabla$  to select "Calculation" and press **ENTER** to proceed to step 13.
- $\bullet$  To measure the second position again, use  $\Delta \nabla$  to select "Repeat Last Test" and press ENTER.

#### **1 1** Repeat step 10, measuring positions 3 to 8.

When measurement of position 8 is completed, a "Measurements finished." message is displayed.



#### **19** Select "Calculation" and then press ENTER.

Calculation

**IZ** Measuring results are analyzed, and the frequency response of each speaker in the listening room is determined.



• Analysis takes several minutes to complete. The more speakers and measurement positions that there are, the more time it takes to perform the analysis.

#### Set up speakers (Audyssey<sup>®</sup> Setup)

Check Store Finish 13 Use  $\Delta \nabla$  to select the item you want to check, and then press **14** Select "Store" and then press ENTER. Save the measurement results. **1** Unplug the setup microphone from the unit's SETUP **J** MIC jack. ENTER. **16** Select "Next" and then press ENTER. Audyssey Setup AUDYSSEY Check processing results. To proceed, press "Store" **7** Set Audyssey Dynamic Volume<sup>®</sup>. 000 👸 Audyssey Setup Check processing results. To proceed, press "Store" Audyssey Setup You can set Dynamic Volume function, which automatically sts volume level for all conter Do you want to enable? AUDYSSEY Audyssey Setup • Subwoofers may measure a greater reported distance than Now storing....Please wait the actual distance due to added electrical delay common in • This feature adjusts the output volume to the optimal level while constantly monitoring the level of the audio input to the unit. subwoofers. • If you want to check another item, press BACK. Optimal volume control is performed automatically without any loss in the dynamism and clarity of the sound when, for example, NOTE the volume suddenly increases for commercials shown during television programs. • If the result differs from the actual connection status, or if "Caution!" **When turning Dynamic Volume on** is displayed, see "Error messages" (mpage 32). Then carry out Audyssey<sup>®</sup> Setup again. • Press  $\Delta$  to select "Yes", and then press **ENTER**. • Saving the results requires about 10 seconds. • If you change speaker positions or orientation, perform Audyssey® The unit automatically enters "Medium" (page 110) mode. • During saving of measurements results, "Now storing...Please Setup again to find the optimal equalizer settings. wait." is displayed. When saving is completed, "Storing complete. U When turning Dynamic Volume off

• Press  $\nabla$  to select "No", and then press **ENTER**.

#### NOTE

After performing Audyssey<sup>®</sup> Setup, do not change the speaker connections or subwoofer volume. In event of a change, perform Audyssey<sup>®</sup> Setup again.

Audyssey<sup>®</sup> Setup is now finished. Please unplug microphone." is

During saving of measurement results, be sure not to turn off the

displayed.

NOTE

power.

# **Error messages**

## NOTE

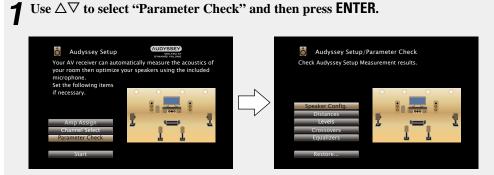
- An error message is displayed if Audyssey<sup>®</sup> Setup could not be completed due to speaker placement, the measurement environment, etc. If an error message is displayed, check the relevant items and perform the necessary measures. Then perform Audyssey<sup>®</sup> Setup again.
- If the result still differs from the actual connection status after remeasurement or the error message still appears, it is possible that the speakers are not connected properly. Turn this unit off, check the speaker connections and repeat the measurement process from the beginning.
- Be sure to turn off the power before checking speaker connections.

| Examples   | Error details  | Measures   |
|--|--|--|
| Audyssey Setup Caution1 : Please check the cable connection and retry. Microphone or Speaker is none Retry                   | <ul> <li>The connected setup microphone is broken, or a device other than the supplied setup microphone is connected.</li> <li>Not all speakers could be detected.</li> </ul>      | <ul> <li>Connect the included setup microphone to the SETUP MIC jack of this unit.</li> <li>Check the speaker connections.</li> </ul>  |
| Audyssey Setup<br>Caution!<br>Ambient noise is too high or level is too low  | <ul> <li>There is too much noise in the room for accurate measurements to be made.</li> <li>Speaker or subwoofer sound is too low for accurate measurements to be made.</li> </ul> | <ul> <li>Either turn off any device generating noise or move it away.</li> <li>Perform again when the surroundings are quieter.</li> <li>Check the speaker installation and the direction in which the speakers are facing.</li> <li>Adjust the subwoofer's volume.</li> </ul> |
| Audyssey Setup<br>Caution! : Please check the cable connection and retry.<br>Front R :None                                   | • The displayed speaker could not be detected.<br>(The screen on the left indicates that the front right speaker cannot be detected.)  | • Check the connections of the displayed speaker.  |
| Audyssey Setup<br>Caution! : Please check the cable connection and retry.<br>Front R : Phase<br>Retry Phase Info: Skip Error | • The displayed speaker is connected with the polarity reversed.<br>(The screen on the left indicates that the polarity phases of the front right speakers are reversed.)          | <ul> <li>Check the polarity of the displayed speaker.</li> <li>For some speakers, this error message may be displayed even if the speaker is properly connected. If you are sure the connection is correct, use &lt; ▷ to select "Skip Error", then press ENTER.</li> </ul>    |

#### Set up speakers (Audyssey<sup>®</sup> Setup)

# **Parameter Check**

This function enables you to check the measurement results and equalizer characteristics after  ${\rm Audyssey}^{\textcircled{B}}$  Setup.



#### 2 Use $\Delta \nabla$ to select the item you want to check, then press ENTER. Measurement results for each speaker are displayed.

| Speaker Config. | Check the speaker configuration.       |
|-----------------|--|
| Distances       | Check the speaker distance.            |
| Levels          | Check the speaker channel level.       |
| Crossovers      | Check the speaker crossover frequency. |
| Equalizers      | Check the equalizer.                   |
|                 |  |

• If "Equalizers" is selected, press △∇ to select equalizing curve ("Audyssey" or "Audyssey Flat") to be checked.

Use  $\Delta \nabla$  to switch the display between the different speakers.

#### **3** Press <a>d or BACK. The confirmation scree

The confirmation screen reappears. Repeat step 2.

## Retrieving Audyssey<sup>®</sup> Setup settings

If you set "Restore..." to "Yes", you can return to Audyssey<sup>®</sup> Setup measurement result (value calculated at the start by  $MultEQ^{@}$  XT) even when you have changed each setting manually.



This unit can be connected to a home network (LAN) to listen to Internet radio or play back music files and still image (JPEG) files stored on a computer.

GUI

### **Connect the Ethernet cable ( Connecting to a home network (LAN)**").

#### **7** Turn on this unit (**page 34**).

This unit performs automatic network setup due to the DHCP function. When connecting to a network that has no DHCP function, perform the setting in "Settings" (magnet page 126).

## **Playback (Basic operation)**

#### Setup (page 27)

- **Turning the power on** (*page 34*)
- □ Selecting the input source (marging 34)
- □ Adjusting the master volume (Pripage 35)
- **Turning off the sound temporarily** (*The page 35*)
- Playing a Blu-ray Disc player/DVD player (**E** page 35)
- □ Playing a CD player (Provide 35)
- □ Playing an iPod (<sup>™</sup> page 36)
- □ Playing a USB memory device (12) page 39)
- Listening to FM broadcasts (*P* page 42)
- Listening to internet radio (<u>page 50</u>)
- **Playing back files stored on a PC and NAS** (**E**page 53)
- Using online services ( page 57)
- □ Convenient functions ( Cr page 65)
- □ AirPlay function ( page 69)

#### Selecting a listening mode (Sound Mode) (CP page 71)

Playback (Advanced operation) (Playback (Advanced operation)

### Important information

Before starting playback, make the connections between the different devices and the settings on the unit.

#### NOTE

Also refer to the operating instructions of the connected devices when playing them.

### Turning the power on

| Press <b>POWER</b> (b) to turn on power to |                     |
|--|---------------------|
|  | (                   |
| the unit.                                  | ZONE SELECT         |
| The power turns on.                        | (MAIN) (ZONE 2) (SL |
|  |                     |

|       | POWER<br>(b) |  |
|-------|--------------|--|
|       | Buray        |  |
| ME    |              |  |
| JDIO) |              |  |

#### AUX. MEDIA PLAYER. TV AUDIO CD, TUNER, iPod/USB, M-XPor **NETWORK or INTERNET RADIO**) be played back. The desired input source can be selected directly.

Selecting the input source

| <u> </u>                                 |                 |
|--|-----------------|
| Press the input source select button     | CT TOTAL        |
| (CBL/SAT, DVD, Blu-ray, GAME,            | COEP OUT ()     |
| AUX, MEDIA PLAYER, TV AUDIO,             | DVD (Burry)     |
| CD, TUNER, iPod/USB, M-XPort,            | (AIX (MERA)     |
| NETWORK or INTERNET RADIO) to            | CO (TARE)       |
| be played back.                          | (CO (TARE)      |
| The desired input source can be selected | (NOTO) (MARDUT) |
| directly.                                | (NERRET)        |

You can also use the following operation to select an input source.

#### **Select the input source using the main unit** Turn INPUT SELECTOR.

- Turning **INPUT SELECTOR** switches the input source, as shown below.
- -> CBL/SAT -> DVD -> Blu-ray -> GAME -> AUX -> MEDIA PLAYER -
- └ ► M-XPort ← ► TV AUDIO ← ► NETWORK ← ► FM ← ► CD ← ► iPod/USB ← ┘

P

You can also switch the power to standby by pressing **O** ON/ **STANDBY** on the main unit

#### U When power is switched to standby Press POWER ().

#### [STANDBY indicator status in standby mode]

- Normal standby : Red
- When "HDMI Control" (mpage 112) is set to "On" : Orange
- When "IP Control" (page 125) is set to "Always On" : Orange

### Adjusting the master volume

# Use **VOLUME** $\blacktriangle$ **V** to adjust the volume.

- The volume display method varies depending on the "Scale" setting (1007 page 108).
- ❑ When the "Scale" setting (<sup>™</sup><u>page 108</u>) is "0 – 98" [Adjustable range] 0.0 0.5 – 98.0

Important information

- ❑ When the "Scale" setting (<sup>™</sup> page 108) is "-79.5dB 18.0dB"
  - [Adjustable range] ---- -79.5dB 18.0dB
- The variable range differs according to the input signal and channel level setting.

### ø

You can also adjust the master volume by turning  $\ensuremath{\textbf{VOLUME}}$  on the main unit.

### Turning off the sound temporarily

Press MUTE ₫×.

• "MUTE" appears on the display.

•  $\mathbf{q}\mathbf{X}$  appears on a TV screen.

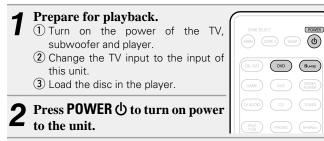


### ø

- The sound is reduced to the level set at "Mute Level" (@page 108).
- To cancel, press  $\textbf{MUTE} \not \textbf{QX}$  again. Muting can also be canceled by adjusting the master volume.

# Playing a Blu-ray Disc player/DVD player

The following describes the procedure for playing Blu-ray Disc player/ DVD player.



**3** Press **Blu-ray** or **DVD** to switch an input source for a player used for playback.

**4** Play the Blu-ray Disc player or DVD player.

• Make the necessary settings on the player (language setting, subtitles setting, etc.) beforehand.

## Playing a CD player

The following describes the procedure for playing CD player.

| <ul> <li><b>1</b> Prepare for playback.</li> <li>① Turn on the power of the subwoofer and player.</li> <li>② Load the disc in the player.</li> </ul> | IONE SELECT EXMEE<br>(WH) (SPE2) (SEI7) (D)<br>(CELSAT) (D) (Bory) |
|--|--|
| <b>2</b> Press <b>POWER</b> (b) to turn on power to the unit.  | GAME ALX MEENA<br>PLAYER<br>(TV AUDIO) CO (TUNER                   |
| <b>3</b> Press <b>CD</b> to switch the input source to "CD".   | Pod<br>/JSB (PHONO) (M-0Port)<br>(NETWORK) (PHTRET)                |
| <b>4</b> Play the CD player.   |  |

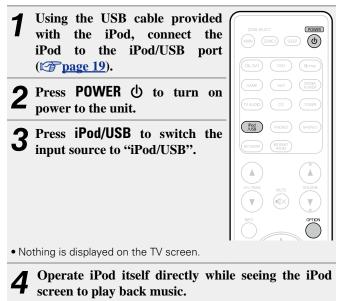
### Playing an iPod

You can use the USB cable provided with the iPod to connect the iPod with the unit's iPod/USB port and enjoy music stored on the iPod. For information on the iPod models that can be played back with this unit, see "Connecting an iPod or USB memory device to the iPod/USB port" (127 page 19).

### Listening to music on an iPod

The iPod display modes include "Direct Mode" and "Remote Mode". By default, "Direct Mode", where you directly operate iPod itself while seeing the iPod screen, is set.

To change to "Remote Mode", where you perform operations while having the iPod information displayed on the TV screen, see "Setting "Remote Mode" (Operation Mode)" (<u>Page 37</u>).

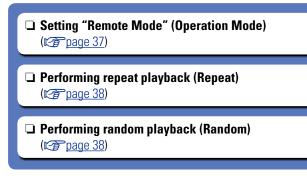


□ Streaming music stored in iPhone, iPod touch, or iPad directly to the unit (☞ page 69)

□ Playing iTunes music with this unit (☞ page 69)

#### **Operations available through the OPTION button**

Press the **OPTION** button to display a menu of functions that can be used on the TV screen. Select the function you want to use from this menu. You can easily find and use the desired function.



#### □ Setting "Remote Mode" (Operation Mode)

In this mode, various lists and screens during playback on iPod are displayed on the TV screen.

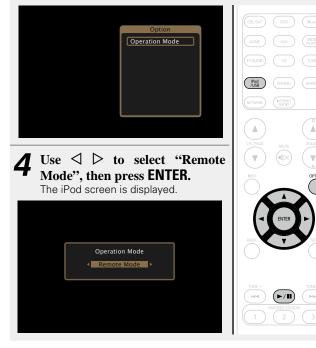
This section describes the steps up to playing back tracks on iPod in "Remote Mode".

#### Press iPod/USB to switch the input source to "iPod/ USB".

#### **•** Press **OPTION**.

Le The option menu screen is displayed.

# **3** Select "Operation Mode", then press ENTER. The "Operation Mode" screen is displayed.



- English letters, numbers and certain symbols are displayed. Incompatible characters are displayed as "." (period).
- Operations available for "Direct Mode" and "Remote Mode" are listed below

| Disp              | lay mode                              | Direct Mode        | Remote Mode |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------|-------------|
| Playable          | Music file                            | ~                  | ~           |
| files             | Video file                            | *                  |             |
| Active<br>buttons | Remote<br>control unit<br>(This unit) | $\checkmark$       | ~           |
|                   | iPod                                  | $\checkmark$       |             |
|                   |                                       | * Only the sound i | s played    |

Only the sound is played

**5** Use  $\Delta \nabla$  to select the item, then press ENTER or  $\triangleright$  to select the file to be used. select the file to be played.

#### 6 Press ENTER, $\triangleright$ or $\blacktriangleright/\blacksquare$ .

Playback starts.

#### □ Adjusting the sound quality (M-DAX)

Make this setting at "M-DAX" (mppage 108) in the menu. You can use the "M-DAX" function to restore to a state close to the audio before compression while correcting the bass feel to enjoy a richer playback experience. The default setting is "Off".

#### **Changing the screen display duration**

Make this setting at "Audio Display" (Ppage 115) in the menu. The default setting is "30s".

Press  $\Delta \nabla \triangleleft \triangleright$  while the display is off to return to the original screen.

#### □ Switching the screen display

In Remote Mode, press STATUS on the main unit during playback. The display switches between track title, artist name, and album title etc. each time the button is pressed.

#### NOTE

- Depending on the type of iPod and the software version, some functions may not operate.
- Note that marantz will accept no responsibility whatsoever for any problems arising with the data on an iPod when using this unit in conjunction with the iPod.

### Performing repeat playback (Repeat)

- Press **OPTION** while in Remote Mode.
- The option menu screen is displayed.

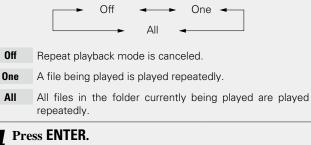
#### 2 Use $\Delta \nabla$ to select "Repeat", then press **ENTER**.



## **3** Use $\triangleleft \triangleright$ to select repeat playback mode.



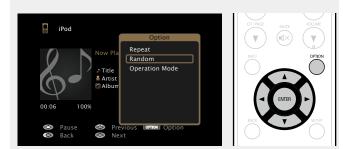
• Each time  $\triangleleft \triangleright$  is pressed, the setting is changed as shown below.



#### The display returns to the playback screen.

#### **Performing random playback (Random)**

- Press **OPTION** while in Remote Mode. 1 The option menu screen is displayed.
- 2 Use  $\Delta \nabla$  to select "Random", then press ENTER.



**3** Use  $\triangleleft \triangleright$  to select random playback mode.



• Each time  $\triangleleft \triangleright$  is pressed, the setting is changed as shown below.

Off ←→ On

- Off Disable random playback.
- Enable random playback. On

Press ENTER. 0

The display returns to the playback screen.

The random playback randomly selects a track to play back from all tracks every time a track ends. Therefore, the same track may be played back consecutively.

#### □ iPod operation buttons

marantz

|                             | <b>Operation buttons</b> | Function  |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------|---|
| ZONE SELECT FOUNDER         | CH/PAGE ▲▼               | Page search                                     |
| (GL.SN) (7/0) (BHNY)        |                          | Display of information such as the              |
| GAME AUX MEERA<br>PLOEB     | INFO                     | source name, volume, and sound mode             |
| TV.ALDD CD TUNER            |                          | name  |
| (Ind) (PHONO) (MAXPort)     |                          | Remote / Direct Mode switching /                |
| (NETWORK) (ULEBART)         | OPTION                   | Repeat playback /                               |
|                             |                          | Random playback                                 |
|                             |                          | Cursor operation /                              |
|                             |                          | Auto search (cue, $\Delta  abla$ ) /            |
|                             |                          | Manual search (Press and hold, $\Delta  abla$ ) |
|                             | ENTER                    | Enter   |
| INTER                       | (Press and release)      | Enter   |
|                             | ENTER                    | Ston  |
| $\circ$                     | (Press and hold)         | Stop  |
| TIME - TIME -               | BACK                     | Return  |
|                             | SETUP                    | Setup menu                                      |
|                             |                          | Auto search (cue)                               |
| SOUND MODE                  | ►/II                     | Playback / Pause                                |
| (MOME) (MUSE) (GAME) (FURE) |                          |   |

Playing back music or still picture (JPEG) files recorded on a USB memory device.

#### Important information

- Only USB memory devices conforming to mass storage class and MTP (Media Transfer Protocol) standards can be played on this unit.
- This unit is compatible with USB memory devices in "FAT16" or "FAT32" format.
- This unit is compatible with MP3 files conforming to "MPEG-1 Audio Layer-3" standards.
- File types that this unit can play back and specifications are shown below.

#### [Supported file types]

| Supported file types             | USB memory devices *1 |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------|
| WMA (Windows Media Audio)        | √*2                   |
| MP3 (MPEG-1 Audio Layer-3)       | $\checkmark$          |
| WAV                              | $\checkmark$          |
| MPEG-4 AAC                       | √*3                   |
| FLAC (Free Lossless Audio Codec) | $\checkmark$          |
| JPEG                             | $\checkmark$          |

#### \*1 USB memory device

- This unit is compatible with MP3 ID3-Tag (Ver. 2) standard.
- This unit can show the artwork that was embedded by using MP3 ID3-Tag Ver. 2.3 or 2.4.
- This unit is compatible with WMA META tags.
- If the image size (pixels) of an album artwork exceeds 500  $\times$  500 (WMA/MP3/WAV/FLAC) or 349  $\times$  349 (MPEG-4 AAC), then music may not be played back properly.
- WAV format Quantization bit length: 16 bits.
- FLAC format Quantization bit length: 16 or 24 bits.
- \*2 Copyright-protected files can be played on certain portable players compatible with MTP.
- \*3 Only files that are not protected by copyright can be played on this unit.

Content downloaded from pay sites on the Internet are copyright protected. Also, files encoded in WMA format when ripped from a CD, etc. on a computer may be copyright protected, depending on the computer's settings.

#### NOTE

File types that this unit does not support are not displayed.

|                                  | [Compatible formats]   |               |                        |
|----------------------------------|------------------------|---------------|------------------------|
|                                  | Sampling frequency     | Bit rate      | Extension              |
| WMA (Windows Media Audio)        | 32/44.1/48 kHz         | 48 – 192 kbps | .wma                   |
| MP3 (MPEG-1 Audio Layer-3)       | 32/44.1/48 kHz         | 32 – 320 kbps | .mp3                   |
| WAV                              | 32/44.1/48 kHz         | -             | .wav                   |
| MPEG-4 AAC                       | 32/44.1/48 kHz         | 16 – 320 kbps | .aac/<br>.m4a/<br>.mp4 |
| FLAC (Free Lossless Audio Codec) | 32/44.1/48/88.2/96 kHz | _             | .flac                  |

#### □ Maximum Number of Playable Files and Folder

The limits on the number of folders and files that can be displayed by this unit are as follows.

| Item                                 | USB memory devices         |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Memory capacity                      | FAT16 : 2 GB, FAT32 : 2 TB |
| Number of folder directory levels *1 | 8 levels                   |
| Number of folders                    | 500                        |
| Number of files *2                   | 5000                       |

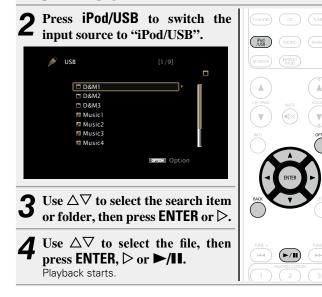
**\*1** The limited number includes the root folder.

\*2 The allowable number of files may differ according to the USB memory device capacity and the file size.

#### Playing a USB memory device

# Playing files stored on USB memory devices

**1** Connect the USB memory device to the iPod/USB port (<u>page 19</u>).



#### □ Adjusting the sound quality (M-DAX)

Make this setting at "M-DAX" (<u>Page 108</u>) in the menu. You can use the "M-DAX" function to restore to a state close to the audio before compression while correcting the bass feel to enjoy a richer playback experience. The default setting is "Off".

□ Going back to the previous screen Press <1 or BACK.

#### **Changing the screen display duration**

Make this setting at "Audio Display" (Ppage 115) in the menu. The default setting is "30s".

Press  $\Delta \nabla \triangleleft \triangleright$  while the display is off to return to the original screen.

- When an MP3 music file includes album art data, the album art can be displayed while playing the file.
- If the USB memory device is divided into multiple partitions, only the first partition is played back.

#### NOTE

- Note that marantz will accept no responsibility whatsoever for any problems arising with the data on a USB memory device when using this unit in conjunction with the USB memory device.
- USB memory devices will not work via a USB hub.
- marantz does not guarantee that all USB memory devices will operate or be supplied power. When using a USB portable hard disk that can draw power from an AC adapter, we recommend using the AC adapter.
- It is not possible to connect and use a computer via the iPod/USB port of this unit using a USB cable.

#### **Operations available through the OPTION button**

Press the **OPTION** button to display a menu of functions that can be used on the TV screen. Select the function you want to use from this menu. You can easily find and use the desired function.

#### □ Searching content with keywords (Text Search) (☞ page 65)

- Performing repeat playback (Repeat)
   (
   (
   <u>page 66</u>)
- Performing random playback (Random)
   (
   (
   <u>page 66</u>)
- Playing back music and a favorite picture at the same time (Picture View) (page 68)
- Playing back still images in sequential order (Slideshow) (<u>Page 68</u>)

### Playing a USB memory device

### USB memory device operation buttons

|                            | <b>Operation buttons</b> | Function                                    |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|---|
| ZONE SELECT POWER          | CH/PAGE ▲▼               | Page search                                 |
| CILLSAT DAD (Record        |                          | Display of information such as the          |
| GAVE ALL REPAR             | INFO                     | source name, volume, and sound mode<br>name |
| (Pod (PSND) (Mathan        |                          | Text Search /                               |
| (NETWORK) (NEEWET)         |                          | Repeat playback /                           |
|                            | OPTION                   | Random playback /                           |
|                            |                          | Picture View /                              |
|                            |                          | Slideshow                                   |
|                            |                          | Cursor operation /                          |
|                            |                          | Auto search (cue, $\Delta \nabla$ )         |
|                            | ENTER                    | Enter                                       |
| MX STUP                    | (Press and release)      | Lintoi                                      |
| $\circ$ $\circ$ $\circ$    | ENTER                    | Stop  |
| THE . THE                  | (Press and hold)         | 5t0p  |
| H4 (H) (H)                 | BACK                     | Return                                      |
|                            | SETUP                    | Setup menu                                  |
| SDUND MODE                 |                          | Auto search (cue)                           |
| (MOVE) (MUSC) (GAVE) (FURE | ►/II                     | Playback / Pause                            |
| marantz                    |                          |   |

### Listening to FM broadcasts

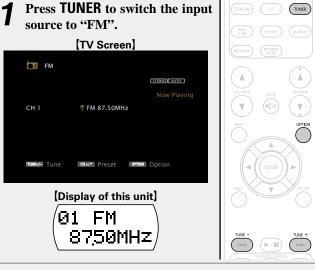
For antenna connections, see "Connecting an FM antenna" (rpage 21).

#### How to tune in

The modes for receiving FM broadcasts consists of "Auto" mode that automatically searches available broadcast stations and "Manual" mode that lets you tune in using buttons to change the frequency. The default setting is "Auto". You can also use "Direct Tune" to tune in by entering the frequency directly.

In "Auto" mode, you cannot tune in to radio stations if the reception is not good. If this is the case, then use the "Manual" mode or "Direct Tune" to tune in.

#### Listening to FM broadcasts



**2** Press TUNE + or TUNE – to select the station you want to hear.

Scanning is performed until it finds an available radio station. When it finds a radio station, it stops the scan automatically and tunes in.

 $\Box$  Adding to the FAVORITE STATION button

(🕼 page 67)

#### **Operations available through the OPTION button**

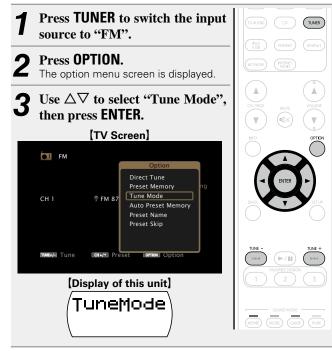
Press the **OPTION** button to display a menu of functions that can be used on the TV screen. Select the function you want to use from this menu. You can easily find and use the desired function.

|       | 1 |   |
|-------|---|---|
|       |   | <ul> <li>Tuning in by entering the radio frequency<br/>(Direct Tune) (<u>Page 44</u>)</li> </ul>              |
|       |   |   |
|       |   | Tuning in to radio stations and presetting them<br>automatically (Auto Preset Memory) ( <u>page 45</u> )      |
|       |   |   |
| UP    |   | Changing the tuning mode (Tune Mode)     (     ( <u>         page 43</u> )     (     (         )         )    |
|       |   |   |
| +     |   | Presetting the current broadcast station<br>(Preset Memory) ( <u>Preset Memory</u> ) ( <u>Preset Memory</u> ) |
| 21    |   |   |
| you   |   | Specify a name for the preset broadcast station<br>(Preset Name) ( <u>Preset Name</u> )                       |
| ion.  |   |   |
| cally |   | Skipping preset broadcast stations     (Preset Skip) (Preset Skip)  |
|       |   |   |

#### Listening to FM broadcasts

#### □ Changing the tuning mode (Tune Mode)

You can change the mode for tuning into FM broadcasts. If you cannot tune in automatically with "Auto" mode, then change the mode to "Manual" and tune in manually.



| <b>4</b> Use | $\triangleleft \triangleright$ to select tuning mode, then press <b>ENTER</b> .  |
|--------------|--|
|              | [TV Screen]  |
|              | FM FM  |
|              | STREED AUTO  |
|              | CH 1   |
|              | 1004676 Tune COLOT Preset Common Option  |
|              | (Display of this unit)   |
|              | (Mode:<br>∢ Auto ►   |
| Auto         | Automatically tune to the station.   |
| Manual       | Manually tune to the station.  |
| wai<br>The   | ss TUNE + or TUNE – to select the station you<br>at to hear.<br>frequency changes in steps each time the button is<br>sed. |

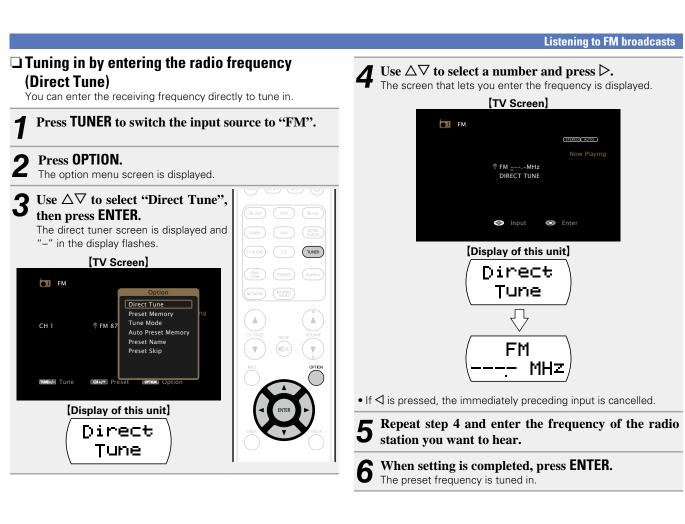
When tuning in stations manually, press and hold **TUNE +** or **TUNE** – to change frequencies continuously.

#### **Changing the screen display duration**

ø

Make this setting at "Audio Display" (17 page 115) in the menu. The default setting is "30s".

Press  $\Delta \nabla \triangleleft \triangleright$  while the display is off to return to the original screen.



### **Presetting broadcast stations**

#### **U** Tuning in to radio stations and presetting them automatically (Auto Preset Memory)

Up to 56 stations can be preset.

If "Auto Preset Memory" is performed after performing "Preset Memory", the "Preset Memory" settings will be overwritten.

Press TUNER to switch the input source to "FM".

2 Press OPTION. The option menu screen is displayed.

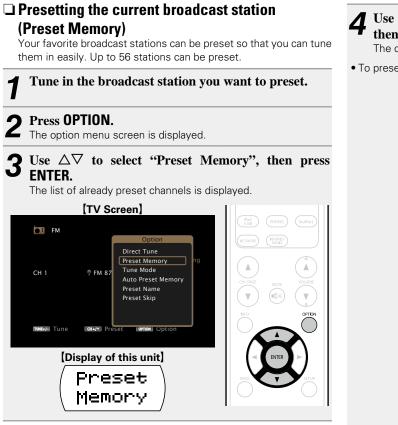
**3** Use  $\triangle \nabla$  to select "Auto Preset Memory", then press **FNTER** ENTER.

|      | [TV So                 | creen]   | _ | (TV AUDIO)   |            | TUNER   |
|------|------------------------|--|---|--------------|------------|---------|
| CH 1 | ବ FM 87                | Option<br>Direct Tune<br>Preset Memory ng<br>Tune Mode |   | IPod<br>/USB | PHONO      | M-XPort |
|      |                        | Auto Preset Memory<br>Preset Name<br>Preset Skip       |   | CH/PAGE      | MUTE       | VOLUME  |
|      | splay of<br>ÂU<br>Pre: | f this unit)<br>t:0                                    |   | BACK         | ENTER<br>V | SETUP   |

The unit starts to tune in to radio stations automatically and preset them.

|   | [TV Screen]                                |  |  |
|---|--|--|--|
| <b>F</b>                                      | и  |  |  |
| CH 1  | CTHEOR AUTO<br>Auto Preset Memory<br>Start |  |  |
| TUNE T  | une CHAR Preset Conon Option               |  |  |
| (Display of this unit)<br>Á . Preset<br>Start |  |  |  |

• When presetting is completed, "Completed" is displayed for about 5 seconds and the option menu screen turns off.

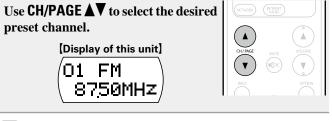




and the "Preset Skip" setting changes to "On".

| Channel | Default Settings   |
|---------|--|
| 1 – 8   | 87.50 / 89.10 / 98.10 / 107.90 / 90.10 / 90.10 / 90.10 / |
| 1-0     | 90.10 MHz  |
| 9 – 16  | 90.10 / 90.10 / 90.10 / 90.10 / 90.10 / 90.10 / 90.10 /  |
| 9-10    | 90.10 MHz  |
| 17 – 24 | 90.10 / 90.10 / 90.10 / 90.10 / 90.10 / 90.10 / 90.10 /  |
| 17 - 24 | 90.10 MHz  |
| 25 – 32 | 90.10/90.10/90.10/90.10/90.10/90.10/90.10/               |
| 25 - 32 | 90.10 MHz  |
| 33 – 40 | 90.10/90.10/90.10/90.10/90.10/90.10/90.10/               |
| 55 - 40 | 90.10 MHz  |
| 41 – 48 | 90.10/90.10/90.10/90.10/90.10/90.10/90.10/               |
| 41 - 40 | 90.10 MHz  |
| 49 – 56 | 90.10/90.10/90.10/90.10/90.10/90.10/90.10/               |
| 49 - 50 | 90.10 MHz  |

#### Listening to preset stations



#### ø

You can also select preset broadcast stations by pressing  $\ensuremath{\text{PRESET}}$  CH + or  $\ensuremath{\text{PRESET}}$  CH – on the unit.

**6** Use  $\triangleleft \triangleright$  to select a name label, then press ENTER. The screen that lets you edit the preset name is displayed.

Enter the characters, then press **OK**.

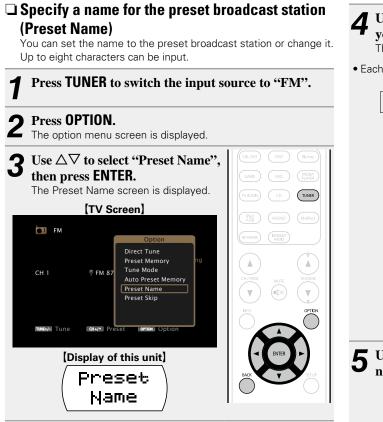
The display returns to the playback screen.

• For character input, see page 104.

8 Press BACK twice. The display returns to the

frequency.

• If you select "Set Defaults", then the unit returns to displaying the



#### Use $\triangleleft \triangleright$ to select the group of the broadcast station you want to name, then press ENTER.

The screen that lets you edit the preset name is displayed.

• Each time  $\triangleleft \triangleright$  is pressed, the setting is changed as shown below.



47

#### **Skipping preset broadcast stations** (Preset Skip)

You can set in advance, the stations you do not want to be displayed when tuning in, by groups or by stations.

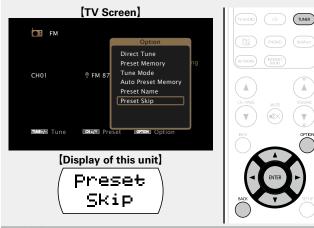
The preset skip setting is useful when tuning in, because only your favorite stations are displayed.

### Press TUNER to switch the input source to "FM".

#### **•** Press **OPTION**.

The option menu screen is displayed.

## **3** Use $\Delta \nabla$ to select "Preset Skip", then press ENTER. The Preset Skip screen is displayed.



**4-1** [To set the stations you want to skip by groups] (1) Use  $\triangleleft \triangleright$  to select the group of broadcast

#### stations you want to skip.

• Each time  $\triangleleft \triangleright$  is pressed, the setting is changed as shown below.

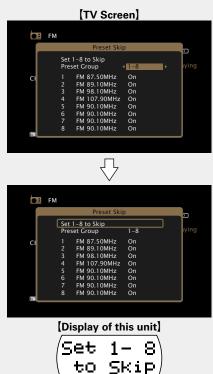
→ 1 - 8 → 9 - 16 → 17 - 24 → 25 - 32 → → 49 - 56 → 41 - 48 → 33 - 40 →

2) Press  $\triangle$  to select "Set \* - \* to Skip", then press ENTER.

All broadcast stations in the group "\* - \*" you selected are not displayed.

(\* are the selected group numbers)

#### ③ Press BACK.



- **4-2** [To set the stations you want to skip by stations] (1) Use  $\triangleleft \triangleright$  to select the group of broadcast stations you want to skip. • Each time  $\triangleleft \triangleright$  is pressed, the setting is changed as shown below → 1 - 8 → 9 - 16 → 17 - 24 → 25 - 32 → → 49 - 56 → 41 - 48 → 33 - 40 →
  - (2) Use  $\Delta \nabla$  to select the broadcast station you want to skip.
  - (3) Use  $\triangleleft \triangleright$  to select "Skip".

The station you selected is not displayed.

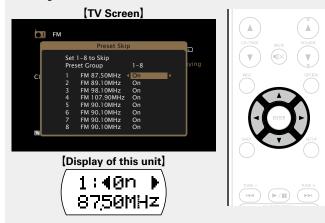


#### Listening to FM broadcasts

### Cancelling preset skip

**1** While the Preset Skip screen is displayed, use *⊲ ⊳* to select a group containing a broadcast station to cancel the skip for.

2 Use  $\bigtriangleup \nabla$  to select a broadcast station to cancel the skip for.



|                     | <b>Operation buttons</b>  | Function  |  |
|---------------------|---------------------------|---|--|
| 20NE SELECT (20NER) | CH/PAGE ▲▼                | Preset channel selection  |  |
|                     | INFO                      | Display of information such as the<br>source name, volume, and sound mode<br>name   |  |
|                     | OPTION                    | Switch tuning modes /<br>Direct frequency tuning /<br>Preset Memory /<br>Auto Preset Memory /<br>Preset Name /<br>Preset Skip |  |
|                     |                           | Cursor operation  |  |
| e Enter             | ENTER                     | Enter   |  |
|                     | BACK                      | Return  |  |
| 0 - 0               | SETUP                     | Setup menu  |  |
| TUNE - TUNE +       | TUNE +, –                 | Tuning (up/down)  |  |
|                     | FAVORITE<br>Station 1 – 3 | Add/call up favorites   |  |

□ FM operation buttons

MOVE MUSC GAVE PURE

marantz

 $3 Use \triangleleft \triangleright to select "On".$  The skip is cancelled.

#### NOTE

You cannot cancel the skip for each group.

### Listening to internet radio

Internet radio refers to radio broadcasts distributed over the Internet. Internet radio stations from around the world can be received.

### Important information

The broad cast station types and specifications supported by this unit for playback are as follows.

#### [Playable broadcast station types]

| Supported file types       | Internet radio |
|----------------------------|----------------|
| WMA (Windows Media Audio)  | $\checkmark$   |
| MP3 (MPEG-1 Audio Layer-3) | $\checkmark$   |

#### [Playable broadcast station specifications]

|                                  | Sampling<br>frequency | Bit rate      | Extension |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------|---------------|-----------|
| <b>WMA</b> (Windows Media Audio) | 32/44.1/48 kHz        | 48 – 192 kbps | .wma      |
| MP3 (MPEG-1<br>Audio Layer-3)    | 32/44.1/48 kHz        | 32 – 320 kbps | .mp3      |

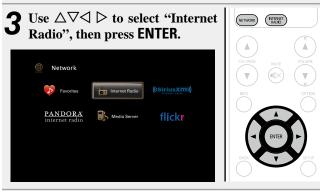
### Listening to internet radio

## **Prepare for playback.** ① Check the network en

- Check the network environment, then turn on this unit's power (<u>ppage 25</u> "Connecting to a home network (LAN)").
- (2) If settings are required, make the "Settings" (
  page 126).

### **2** Press NETWORK.

• You can also press **INTERNET RADIO** to select the input source "Internet Radio" directly.



# **4** Use $\triangle \nabla$ to select the item you want to play, then press ENTER or $\triangleright$ .



| (Country name)          | Displays typical Internet radio stations your country.  |
|-------------------------|---|
| Search<br>Stations      | Displays all Internet radio stations that this unit can tune in to.   |
| Search<br>Podcasts      | Displays Internet radio stations in the podcasts that this unit can tune in to.   |
| Recommended<br>Stations | Displays recommended Internet radio stations.   |
| radiomarantz.<br>com    | Displays Internet radio stations added to favorites in vTuner. For instructions on how to add to favorites in vTuner, see "Using vTuner to add Internet radio stations to favorites" (1977) page 52). |
| Recently<br>Played      | Displays recently played Internet radio stations. Up to 20 stations stored in "Recently Played".  |
| Search by<br>Keyword    | Displays Internet radio stations searched by keyword.<br>For character input, see <u>page 104</u> .   |
| -                       | step 4 until the station list is displayed.   |

**6** Use  $\Delta \nabla$  to select the station, then press ENTER or  $\triangleright$ . Playback starts once buffering reaches "100%".

#### □ Adjusting the sound quality (M-DAX)

Make this setting at "M-DAX" (@page 108) in the menu. You can use the "M-DAX" function to restore to a state close to the audio before compression while correcting the bass feel to enjoy a richer playback experience. The default setting is "Off".

#### Switching the screen display

Press **STATUS** on the main unit.

The display switches between track title and radio station name etc. each time the button is pressed.

#### □ Going back to the previous screen Press <1 or BACK.

#### **Changing the screen display duration**

Make this setting at "Audio Display" (<u>Page 115</u>) in the menu. The default setting is "30s".

Press  $\Delta \nabla \triangleleft \triangleright$  while the display is off to return to the original screen.

#### ø

• There are many Internet radio stations on the Internet, and the quality of the programs they broadcast as well as the bit rate of the tracks varies widely.

Generally, the higher the bit rate, the higher the sound quality, but depending on the communication lines and server traffic, the music or audio signals being streamed may be interrupted. Inversely, lower bit rates mean a lower sound quality but less tendency for the sound to be interrupted.

- "Radio station server full" or "Connection down" is displayed if the station is busy or not broadcasting.
- On this unit, folder and file names can be displayed as titles. Any characters that cannot be displayed are replaced with "." (period).

#### NOTE

The radio station database service may be suspended without notice.

#### **Operations available through the OPTION button**

Press the **OPTION** button to display a menu of functions that can be used on the TV screen. Select the function you want to use from this menu. You can easily find and use the desired function.

| Searching content with keywords |
|---------------------------------|
| (Text Search) (12 page 65)      |

□ Add to favorites from the Option menu (Favorite Memory) (<sup>™</sup> page 67)

Playing back music and a favorite picture at the same time (Picture View) (<u>page 68</u>)

#### □ Playing the last played Internet radio station

This unit memorizes the last played Internet radio station. If you press **INTERNET RADIO** to switch to the Internet radio function from another input source, the last Internet radio station you listened to is played.

#### Press INTERNET RADIO.

The source switches to "Internet Radio" and the last played radio station plays.



#### Using vTuner to add Internet radio stations to favorites

There are many Internet radio stations in the world, and this unit can tune into these stations. But finding the radio station you want to hear may be difficult, because there are too many stations. If this is the case, then please use vTuner, an Internet radio station search website specifically designed for this unit. You can use your PC to search Internet radio stations and add them as your favorites. This unit can play radio stations added to vTuner.

#### Check the MAC address of this unit (*page 125*).

- The screen that lets you edit the preset name is displayed. MAC address:
- The MAC address is necessary when you create an account for vTuner.

#### Use your PC to access the vTuner website (http:// Ζ

#### www.radiomarantz.com).

The vTuner login screen is displayed.

3 Enter the MAC address of this unit, then click "Go".

- The account creation screen is displayed.
- Enter your E-mail address and a password of your choice.

The account is registered and you can now log in.

5 Enter your account information (E-mail address and password) and log in.

The top menu of vTuner is displayed.

Select the search criteria (genre, region, language, O etc.) of your choice.

The list of radio stations matching the criteria is displayed.

• You can also enter a keyword to search for a station you want to hear.

#### Select the radio station of your choice from the list, and then click the Add to Favorites icon.

The screen that lets you create a favorite group is displayed.

**8** Enter the name of the favorite group, then click "Go".

A new favorite group that includes the selected radio station is created.

• Internet radio stations added to favorites in vTuner can be played from "radiomarantz.com" (mppage 50) with this unit.

#### Internet radio operation buttons

|   | <b>Operation buttons</b>     | Function  |
|---|------------------------------|---|
| 20NE SELECT FORMER  | <b>INTERNET RADIO</b>        | Last played internet radio station  |
|   | CH/PAGE ▲▼                   | Page search   |
| GAME         AUX         MEDIA<br>(NAME)           (TVALDD)         CO         (TURE) | INFO                         | Display of information such as the<br>source name, volume, and sound mode<br>name |
|   | OPTION                       | Text Search /<br>Favorite Memory /<br>Picture View                                |
|   |                              | Cursor operation  |
|   | ENTER<br>(Press and release) | Enter   |
| BXX T STLP  | ENTER<br>(Press and hold)    | Stop  |
|   | BACK                         | Return  |
| The - The - Provided Hereiner   | SETUP                        | Setup menu  |
|   | FAVORITE<br>STATION 1 – 3    | Add/call up favorites   |



This unit can play back music files and playlists (m3u, wpl) stored on a PC and on Network Attached Storage (NAS) that supports DLNA.

### Important information

- The network audio playback function of this unit connects to the server using technologies shown below.
- Windows Media Player Network Sharing Service
- Windows Media DRM10
- File types that this unit can play back and specifications are shown below.

#### [Supported file types]

| Supported file types             | Media server *1 |
|----------------------------------|-----------------|
| WMA (Windows Media Audio)        | $\checkmark$    |
| MP3 (MPEG-1 Audio Layer-3)       | $\checkmark$    |
| WAV                              | $\checkmark$    |
| MPEG-4 AAC                       | √*2             |
| FLAC (Free Lossless Audio Codec) | $\checkmark$    |
| JPEG                             | $\checkmark$    |

A server or server software compatible with distribution in the corresponding formats is required to play music files via a network.

- \*1 Media server
  - This unit is compatible with MP3 ID3-Tag (Ver. 2) standard.
  - This unit can show the artwork that was embedded by using MP3 ID3-Tag Ver. 2.3 or 2.4.
  - This unit is compatible with WMA META tags.
  - If the image size (pixels) of an album artwork exceeds 500  $\times$  500 (WMA/MP3/WAV/FLAC) or 349  $\times$  349 (MPEG-4 AAC), then music may not be played back properly.
  - WAV format Quantization bit length: 16 bits.
  - FLAC format Quantization bit length: 16 or 24 bits.
- \*2 Only files that are not protected by copyright can be played on this unit. Content downloaded from pay sites on the Internet are copyright protected. Also, files encoded in WMA format when ripped from a CD, etc. on a computer may be copyright protected, depending on the computer's settings.

#### NOTE

File types that this unit does not support are not displayed.

| [Specifications of supported files] |                        |               |                        |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------|---------------|------------------------|
|                                     | Sampling frequency     | Bit rate      | Extension              |
| WMA (Windows Media Audio)           | 32/44.1/48 kHz         | 48 – 192 kbps | .wma                   |
| MP3 (MPEG-1 Audio Layer-3)          | 32/44.1/48 kHz         | 32 – 320 kbps | .mp3                   |
| WAV                                 | 32/44.1/48 kHz         | -             | .wav                   |
| MPEG-4 AAC                          | 32/44.1/48 kHz         | 16 – 320 kbps | .aac/<br>.m4a/<br>.mp4 |
| FLAC (Free Lossless Audio Codec)    | 32/44.1/48/88.2/96 kHz | -             | .flac                  |

#### Applying media sharing settings

Here, we apply the settings to share music files stored on a PC and NAS on the network.

#### □ Sharing media stored in PC

If you are using a media server, be sure to apply this setting first.

# When using Windows Media Player 12 (Windows 7)

NOTE

Perform this procedure after changing the control panel display to "Category".

**1** In the PC's "Control Panel", select "Network and Internet" - "Choose homegroup and sharing options".

**2** Select the "Stream my pictures, music, and videos to all devices on my home network" check box and select "Choose media streaming options".

**3** Select "Allowed" in the drop-down list for "SR5007".

**4** Select "Allowed" in the drop-down list for "Media programs on this PC and remote connections...".

**5** Click "OK" to finish.

| When using Windows | : Media P | 'layer 11 |
|--------------------|-----------|-----------|
|--------------------|-----------|-----------|

Start up Windows Media Player 11 on the PC.

Select "Media Sharing" in the "Library".

- **3** Click the "Share my media" check box, select "SR5007", and then click "Allow".
- **4** As you did in step 3, select the icon of the device (other PCs and mobile devices) you want to use as a media controller, and then click "Allow".

**5** Click "OK" to finish.

#### Sharing media stored in NAS

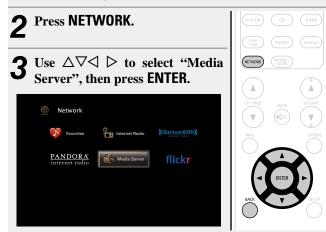
Change settings on the NAS to allow this unit and other devices (PCs and mobile devices) used as media controllers to access the NAS. For details, see the owner's manual that came with the NAS.

#### Playing back files stored on a PC and NAS

Use this procedure to play music files, image files or playlists.

#### Prepare for playback.

- Check the network environment, then turn on this unit's power (<u>page 25</u> "Connecting to a home network (LAN)").
  - (2) If settings are required, make the "Settings" (1) page 126).
     (3) Prepare the computer (1) Computer's operating instructions).



- **4** Use  $\Delta \nabla$  to select the server including the file to be played, then press ENTER or  $\triangleright$ .
- 5 Use  $\triangle \nabla$  to select the search item or folder, then press ENTER or  $\triangleright$ .
- **6** Repeat step 4 until the file is displayed.

**7** Use  $\Delta \nabla$  to select the file, then press ENTER or  $\triangleright$ . Playback starts once buffering reaches "100%".

#### □ Adjusting the sound quality (M-DAX)

Make this setting at "M-DAX" (F page 108) in the menu. You can use the "M-DAX" function to restore to a state close to the audio before compression while correcting the bass feel to enjoy a richer playback experience. The default setting is "Off".

#### Switching the screen display

Press **STATUS** on the main unit.

The display switches between track title, artist name, and album title each time the button is pressed.

#### □ Going back to the previous screen Press <1 or BACK.

#### **Changing the screen display duration**

Make this setting at "Audio Display" (page 115) in the menu. The default setting is "30s".

Press  $\Delta \nabla \triangleleft \triangleright$  while the display is off to return to the original screen.

- ø
  - When a WMA (Windows Media Audio), MP3 or MPEG-4 AAC file includes album art data, the album art can be displayed while the music files are playing.
  - If you use Ver. 11 or later of Windows Media Player, the album art for WMA files can be displayed.
  - WMA Lossless files can be played when using a server supporting transcoding, such as Windows Media Player Ver. 11 or later.

#### NOTE

- Depending on the size of the still picture (JPEG) file, some time may be required for the file to be displayed.
- The order in which the tracks/files are displayed depends on the server specifications. If the tracks/ files are not displayed in alphabetical order due to the server specifications, searching by the first letter may not work properly.

#### Playing back files stored on a PC and NAS

#### **Operations available through the OPTION button**

Press the **OPTION** button to display a menu of functions that can be used on the TV screen. Select the function you want to use from this menu. You can easily find and use the desired function.

- □ Searching content with keywords (Text Search) (12 page 65)
- Performing repeat playback (Repeat)
   (
   (
   <u>page 66</u>)
- Performing random playback (Random)
   (
   (
   <u>page 66</u>)
- □ Add to favorites from the Option menu (Favorite Memory) (<u>Page 67</u>)
- □ Playing back music and a favorite picture at the same time (Picture View) (page 68)
- Playing back still images in sequential order (Slideshow) (page 68)

|  | <b>Operation buttons</b>     | Function  |
|--|------------------------------|---|
| ZONE SELECT EXTERNAL (MUN) (ZONE 2) (SLEP) (() | CH/PAGE                      | Page search   |
|  | INFO                         | Display of information such as the<br>source name, volume, and sound mode<br>name                           |
|  | OPTION                       | Text Search /<br>Repeat playback /<br>Random playback /<br>Favorite Memory /<br>Picture View /<br>Slideshow |
|  |                              | Cursor operation /<br>Auto search (cue, $\Delta \nabla$ )   |
|  | ENTER<br>(Press and release) | Enter   |
|  | ENTER<br>(Press and hold)    | Stop  |
|  | BACK                         | Return  |
|  | SETUP                        | Setup menu  |
| NOME (NUSE) GAVE (PUE)                         |                              | Auto search (cue)   |
| marantz  | ►/II                         | Playback / Pause  |
| RC017SR  | FAVORITE<br>Station 1 – 3    | Add/call up favorites   |

□ Media server operation buttons

### Using online services

This unit supports playback of the online services shown below.

#### About Flickr (<u>Page 58</u>)

Flickr is an online photograph sharing service that started in 2004. You can use the this unit to view photographs that have been made public by Flickr users. You do not need an account to use Flickr. To view photographs that you recorded yourself, you need an account in order to upload these photographs to the Flickr server. For details, see the Flickr homepage.

http://www.flickr.com/

#### □ About Pandora<sup>®</sup> (☞ page 60)

Pandora is an automated music recommendation and Internet radio service created by the Music Genome Project.

To listen to Pandora you will need a free Pandora account. If you do not have a Pandora account, you can create one at <u>www.pandora.com</u> or from the Pandora smartphone application.

It is necessary to associate this machine with a Pandora account by visiting <u>http://www.pandora.com/</u> <u>marantz</u> from your PC.

#### □ About SiriusXM (2 page 63)

Enjoy anywhere access to the unparalleled content of SiriusXM.

Whether on your computer, smartphone, tablet, Lynx Portable Enjoy anywhere access to the unparalleled content of SiriusXM.

Whether on your computer, smartphone, tablet, Lynx Portable Radio, or compatible Internet-connected device, you don't need to be in your vehicle to enjoy SiriusXM.

For details, see the SiriusXM homepage.

http://www.siriusxm.com

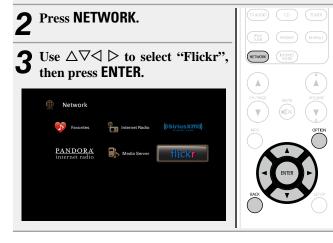
### Viewing photographs on the Flickr site

You can view photographs shared by particular users, or all of the photographs shared on Flickr.

#### $\Box$ Viewing photographs shared by particular users

#### Prepare for playback.

- Check the network environment, then turn on this unit's power (page 25 "Connecting to a home network (LAN)").
  - If settings are required, make the "Settings" (page 126).



Use  $\Delta \nabla$  to select "Add Flickr Contact", then press ENTER or  $\triangleright$ .



**5** In "Contact", add the screen name (user name you want to view) you want to add.

• For character input, see page 104.

**6** After inputting the "Contact", press **OK**.

- The screen name is added to "Contact", and the screen name you entered in Step 5 is displayed on the top screen of Flickr.
- If you enter a screen name that does not exist, "The Flickr Contact you entered could not be found" is displayed. Check and enter the correct screen name.

# **7** Use $\Delta \nabla$ to select the folder, and then press ENTER or $\triangleright$ .

- **Favorites** Displays the favorite photographs of the specified user.
- **Photostream** Displays a list of shared photographs.
- PhotoSets Displays the folder (photograph album) list.
- Contacts Displays the screen name used by the specified user in Contacts.
- Remove this Contact Deletes a user from Flickr Contact.

Add this Contact

Adds a user from Flickr Contact.

**8** Use  $\Delta \nabla$  to select the file, and then press ENTER or  $\triangleright$ . The selected file is displayed.

#### □ Going back to the previous screen Press <1 or BACK.

#### **Operations available through the OPTION button**

Press the **OPTION** button to display a menu of functions that can be used on the TV screen. Select the function you want to use from this menu. You can easily find and use the desired function.

#### Playing back still images in sequential order (Slideshow) (<u>page 68</u>)

#### Using online services

### □ Viewing all photographs on Flickr

| 1 | Use $\Delta \nabla$ | to select | "All | Content", | then | press | ENTER |
|---|---------------------|-----------|------|-----------|------|-------|-------|
|   | or ⊳.               |           |      |           |      |       |       |





|        | are added as favorites.                       |
|--------|---|
| Recent | Displays the most recently added photographs. |

- Search by text Search for photographs by keyword.
- **3** Use  $\Delta \nabla$  to select the file, and then press ENTER or  $\triangleright$ .

The selected file is displayed.

#### NOTE

Depending on the file format, some photographs cannot be viewed.

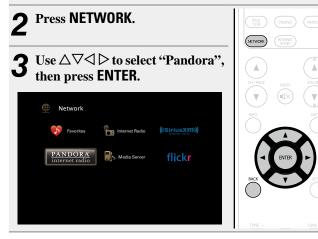
| ) Flickr ope                                    | eration buttons          | 5                                   |
|---|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|
|   | <b>Operation buttons</b> | Function                            |
| ZONE SELECT FORMER<br>(MAN) (2016-2) (SLEP) (() | CH/PAGE ▲▼               | Page search                         |
|   |                          | Display of information such as the  |
|   | INFO                     | source name, volume, and sound mode |
| TVAUDED CO (TUNER)                              |                          | name                                |
| (Pod<br>1158) (PHONO (MAXDurt)                  | OPTION                   | Slideshow                           |
| (NETWORK) (PAERAET                              |                          | Cursor operation /                  |
|   |                          | Auto search (cue, $\Delta  abla$ )  |
|   | ENTER                    | Enter                               |
|   | (Press and release)      | Enter                               |
|   | ENTER                    | Ston                                |
|   | (Press and hold)         | Stop                                |
|   | BACK                     | Return                              |
|   | SETUP                    | Setup menu                          |
|   |                          |                                     |

(NORE) (NUSE) (ONE) (PUSE) marantz

### Listening to Pandora ${}^{\textcircled{R}}$

#### Prepare for playback.

- 1) Check the network environment, then turn on this unit's power (mpage 25 "Connecting to a home network (LAN)").
  - (2) If settings are required, make the "Settings" (Page 126).
  - ③ Complete step 4 and obtain a Pandora account.
  - If you already have a Pandora account, you do not need to obtain a new account. Use your existing Pandora account.



**4** If you have a Pandora account, use  $\triangle \nabla$  to select "I have a Pandora account", then press ENTER or  $\triangleright$ .

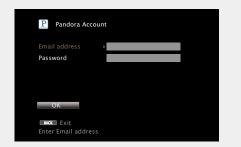


 $\bullet$  If you do not have a Pandora account, press abla to select "I am new to Pandora". The URL of Pandora and activation code are displayed. Access the Pandora web page from your PC and register the displayed activation code and account information. Then press ENTER.

| I have a Pandora account<br>I am new to Pandora<br>Please go to<br>http://www.pandora.com/marantz and follow<br>the instructions there to create a new account.<br>Your activation code is ******** | P    | Pandora  |
|---|------|--|
| Please go to<br>http://www.pandora.com/marantz and follow<br>the instructions there to create a new account.<br>Your activation code is   |      |  |
|   |      | Please go to<br>http://www.pandora.com/marantz <b>and follow</b> |
| MCC Cancel 📀 Continue   | ì    | our activation code is : ******                                  |
|   | BACK | Cancel 📀 Continue  |

This is an identification code required to register your purchased product to the Pandora service. This code is used to obtain your account.

**5** Input "Email address" and "Password".



• For character input, see page 104.

After inputting the "Email address" and "Password", 0 select "OK", then press ENTER.

If the "Email address" and "Password" match, the top menu for Pandora is displayed.

#### NOTE

Press BACK to cancel the input. When "Cancel input?" is displayed, select "Yes", then press ENTER.

#### **Creating a new station**

You can create up to 100 radio stations.

Use  $\Delta \nabla$  to select "New Station", then press ENTER or ⊳.





3 Use  $\Delta \nabla$  to select "Search by Artist" or "Search by Track", then press ENTER.

You can search and display a list by track or artist.

| Track or Artist D&M2_<br>A<br>N<br>Search by Artist Z<br>Search by Track<br>S |
|---|
| SPACE + + INSERT DELETE OK  |

Press  $\Delta \nabla$ , select a file (e.g. D&M2) from the list, and press ENTER or  $\triangleright$ .

"Radio" is added to the end of a filename, and your new station is created (e.g. D&M2 Radio).



• Your new station will play music with similar qualities to the artist or track you entered.

#### Listening to an existing station

Use  $\Delta \nabla$  and select the radio station ("D&M2 Radio") that you want to listen to, and press ENTER or  $\triangleright$ .



#### Listening to created radio stations at random

Use  $\Delta \nabla$  to select "Quick Mix", then press **ENTER** or  $\triangleright$ . Created radio stations are selected at random, and tracks are streamed.



#### **Giving Feedback and Managing Stations**

You can personalize your stations by providing feedback.

#### Press D while a track is playing. The Pandora menu screen is displayed. Menu [1/7] Me

the next track )

### NOTE

You can Skip up to 6 Tracks that are being played back within 1 hour.You can create up to 100 Stations (radio stations).

#### 🗆 Sign out

Disassociate this unit from your Pandora account.



**2** When the popup menu appears, use  $\triangleleft \triangleright$  to select "Yes", then press ENTER.

#### Pandora operation buttons

marantz

|   | <b>Operation buttons</b>     | Function                            |
|---|------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| ZONE SELECT FORMER<br>(MAN) (ZONE 2) (SLEP) (() | CH/PAGE ▲▼                   | Page search                         |
| (31.54) (7/0) (8)-19/                           |                              | Display of information such as the  |
| GAME AUX MEER                                   | INFO                         | source name, volume, and sound mode |
| TVALDED CD (TUNER)                              |                              | name                                |
| (Pod<br>155) (PHONO) (M-RPort)                  |                              | Cursor operation /                  |
|   |                              | Auto search (cue, $ abla$ )         |
|   | ENTER<br>(Press and release) | Enter                               |
|   | ENTER<br>(Press and hold)    | Stop                                |
|   | BACK                         | Return                              |
| INTER   | SETUP                        | Setup menu                          |
| STUP  |                              | Skips the current track,            |
|   |                              | subject to skip limit               |
| TIPE - TIME +                                   | ►/II                         | Playback/Pause                      |
|   |                              |                                     |

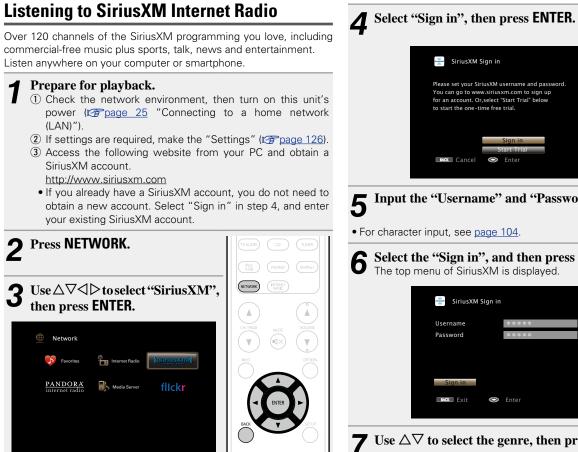
|                            | the next track.)   |
|----------------------------|--|
| l don't like<br>this track | <ul> <li>Press when you don't like the track that is being played.</li> <li>It will return to the Play Screen. And  (Thumbs down) icon is displayed. (The icon is not displayed on the next track.)</li> </ul> |
| Why is this track playing? | • Displays the reason why Pandora selected this track.   |
| Create station             | • Creates a Station for the Track or Artist being played.  |
| Bookmark<br>this artist    | <ul> <li>Bookmarks the artist currently being played.</li> <li>You can check on a computer or iPhone etc.</li> <li>For details, see the Pandora web page.</li> </ul>   |
| Bookmark<br>this track     | <ul> <li>Bookmarks the track currently being played.</li> <li>You can check on a computer or iPhone etc.</li> <li>For details, see the Pandora web page.</li> </ul>  |
| l'm tired of<br>this track | <ul><li>Press when you don't like the track that is being played.</li><li>The track will not be played for 1 month.</li></ul>  |
| Delete this station        | • Press when you want to delete the station that is being played.  |

• It will return to the Play Screen. And 🛃 (Thumbs

up) icon is displayed. (The icon is not displayed on

Going back to the previous screen

Press ⊲ or **BACK**.





| Exit        | Enter  |  |
|-------------|--------|--|
| Sign in     |        |  |
|             |        |  |
|             |        |  |
| Password    | ****   |  |
| Username    | ****   |  |
| SiriusXM Si | ign in |  |

- Use  $\Delta \nabla$  to select the genre, then press **ENTER** or  $\triangleright$ .
- **8** Use  $\Delta \nabla$  to select the file, and then press ENTER or  $\triangleright$ . ⊳. The selected file is displayed.

#### Using online services

#### 🗆 Sign out

Disassociate this unit from your SiriusXM account.

While the SiriusXM top menu is displayed, press 1 BACK.

# **2** When the popup menu appears, use $\triangleleft \triangleright$ to select "Yes", then press ENTER.



### □ SiriusXM operation buttons

SOUND MODE marantz

|   | <b>Operation buttons</b>     | Function  |
|---|------------------------------|---|
| ZONE SELECT FORMER  | CH/PAGE ▲▼                   | Page search   |
| (11.54) (700 (Hesty)<br>(24.64) (700 (Hesty)<br>(71.445B) (200 (TUMB) | INFO                         | Display of information such as the<br>source name, volume, and sound mode<br>name |
| (Pod<br>JUSE) (PEDD) (MARINT)   |                              | Cursor operation  |
|   | ENTER<br>(Press and release) | Enter   |
|   | ENTER<br>(Press and hold)    | Stop  |
|   | BACK                         | Return  |
|   | SETUP                        | Setup menu  |
| RMX STUP  | FAVORITE<br>Station 1 – 3    | Add/call up favorites   |

### **Convenient functions**

Here, we explain how to use convenient functions for NETWORK sources and USB sources. The source names under the titles of each function's description are sources that allow use of these functions.

- □ Searching content with keywords (Text Search) (☞ page 65)
- Performing repeat playback (Repeat)
   (
   <u>page 66</u>)
- Performing random playback (Random)
   (
   (
   <u>page 66</u>)
- □ Favorites function (marchine 67)
- Playing back music and a favorite picture at the same time (Picture View) (page 68)
- Playing back still images in sequential order (Slideshow) (page 68)

# Searching content with keywords (Text Search)

- USB Internet Radio Media Server
- **1** While content is playing, press OPTION. The option menu screen is displayed.
- **2** Use  $\Delta \nabla$  to select "Text Search", then press ENTER. The keyboard input screen is displayed.



- **3** Enter the first character of the Internet radio station or file you want to search for, and then press
- For character input, see page 104.

### ø

"Text Search" searches for Internet radio stations or files that start with the entered first character from the displayed list.

#### NOTE

"Text Search" may not work for some lists.

#### □ Playing back a search result content

Use  $\triangle \nabla$  to select the content you want to play, and then press ENTER or  $\triangleright$ . Playback starts.



### Performing repeat playback (Repeat)

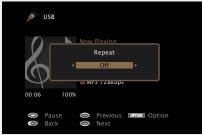
#### USB Media Server

**1** While content is playing, press OPTION. The option menu screen is displayed.

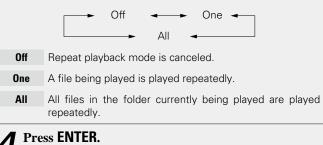
### **2** Use $\Delta \nabla$ to select "Repeat", then press ENTER.



# **3** Use $\triangleleft \triangleright$ to select repeat playback mode.



• Each time  $\triangleleft \triangleright$  is pressed, the setting is changed as shown below.

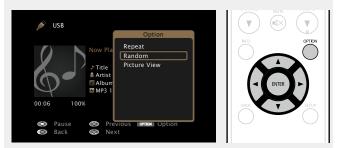


The display returns to the playback screen.

### Performing random playback (Random)

USB Media Server

- While content is playing, press **OPTION**.
  - The option menu screen is displayed.
- **2** Use  $\Delta \nabla$  to select "Random", then press ENTER.



**3** Use  $\triangleleft \triangleright$  to select random playback mode.

| ✓ USB   |  |
|---|--|
| Random  |  |
| 00:06 100%<br>Pause SPrevious Control Option<br>Back Next |  |

 $\bullet$  Each time  $\triangleleft\,\triangleright$  is pressed, the setting is changed as shown below.

Off 🔶 On

- Off Disable random playback.
- **On** Enable random playback.



The random playback randomly selects a track to play back from all tracks every time a track ends. Therefore, the same track may be played back consecutively.

#### **Favorites function**

There are two ways to add content to favorites:

- ① Add to favorites from the Option menu
- 2 Add to the FAVORITE STATION button

#### □ Add to favorites from the Option menu (Favorite Memory)

#### Internet Radio | Media Server

You can add up to 100 items as favorites for all sources (Internet Radio and Media Server).

#### While content is playing, press **OPTION**.

The option menu screen is displayed.

# **2** Use $\Delta \nabla$ to select "Favorite Memory", then press ENTER.

"Favorite added" is displayed, and the current content is added to favorites.



• The display returns to the playback screen when the procedure is completed.

#### Playing back content added in "Favorite Memory"

Press NETWORK.



**3** Use  $\Delta \nabla$  to select the content you want to play, and then press ENTER or  $\triangleright$ .

Playback starts.

#### □ Adding to the FAVORITE STATION button

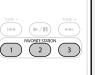
You can add up to three types of content.

#### NOTE

- Please note that if you add new content to a number that already contains content, the older content is deleted.
- The following operations update the database on the media server, which may make the added music files unplayable.
- When you quit the media server and then restart it.
- $\bullet$  When music files are deleted or added on the media server.
- When using an ESCIENT server, place "ESCIENT" before the server name.

While content is playing, press and hold one of the FAVORITE STATION 1-3 buttons for more than 3 seconds. The content is added to the button you

pressed.



ø

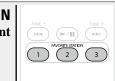
Contents that can be added to the **FAVORITE STATION** button differ depending on the input source.

| Input source   | Contents that can be added            |  |  |
|----------------|---------------------------------------|--|--|
| FM             | Input source / Radio station          |  |  |
| Internet Radio | Input source / Internet Radio station |  |  |
| Media Server   | Input source / Track                  |  |  |
| Flickr         | Input source                          |  |  |
| Pandora        | Input source                          |  |  |
| SiriusXM       | Input source                          |  |  |
| Favorites      | Input source                          |  |  |

# Playing back content added to the FAVORITE STATION button

You can easily call up content by pressing the **FAVORITE STATION** button.





# □ Deleting content added to favorites (Remove Favorites)

#### Press NETWORK.



3 Use  $\Delta \nabla$  to select the content you want to delete from favorites, then press OPTION. The option menu screen is displayed.

**4** Use  $\Delta \nabla$  to select "Remove Favorites", then press **ENTER**.

"Favorite removed" is displayed, and the selected content is deleted from favorites.



• The display returns to the original screen when the procedure is completed.

# Playing back music and a favorite picture at the same time (Picture View)

#### USB Internet Radio Media Server

- Play back a still picture (2 page 58).
- **2** Play back a music file or Internet radio station (<u>Page 50, 55</u>).

**B** Press OPTION. The option menu screen is displayed.

**4** Use  $\Delta \nabla$  to select "Picture View", then press ENTER. The option menu disappears, and the picture you were viewing is shown on the screen.

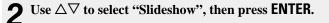


# Playing back still images in sequential order (Slideshow)

You can play back still image (JPEG) files stored on a USB memory device or media server and pictures on Flickr website as a slide show. The display time can also be set.

#### Play back an image and press **OPTION**.

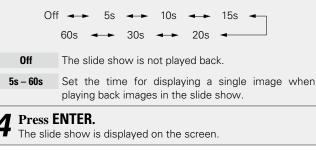
The option menu screen is displayed.





### **3** Use $\triangleleft \triangleright$ to set the display time.

• Each time  $\triangleleft \triangleright$  is pressed, the setting is changed as shown below.



### **A**

This unit plays back image (JPEG) files in the orientation in which they are stored in the folder.

## **AirPlay function**

Enjoy music from your iTunes library with high quality sound anywhere in your home.

Use the Apple Remote app\* for iPhone, iPod touch and iPad to control iTunes from any room in your home.

\* Available as a free download from the App Store.

# Streaming music stored in iPhone, iPod touch, or iPad directly to the unit

If you update your "iPhone/iPod touch/iPad" to iOS 4.2.1 or later, you can stream music stored in your "iPhone/iPod touch/iPad" directly to this unit.

**1** Make the Wi-Fi settings for iPhone, iPod touch, or iPad.

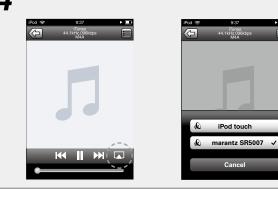
• For details, see your device's manual.

2 Startup iPhone, iPod touch, or iPad music or iPod app.

is displayed on the iPhone, iPod touch or iPad screen.

### **3** Tap the AirPlay icon **[**.

### **A** Select the speaker you want to use.



#### NOTE

In playback using the AirPlay function, the sound is output at the iPhone, iPod touch, iPad or iTunes volume setting level. You should turn down the iPhone, iPod touch, iPad or iTunes volume prior to playback and then adjust it to a suitable level.

#### □ Playing iTunes music with this unit

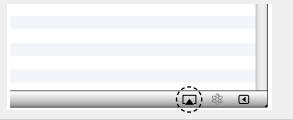
**1** Install iTunes 10, or later, on a Mac or Windows PC that is connected to the same network as this unit.

2 Turn this unit ON. Set "IP Control" (Page 125) to "Always On" for this unit.

#### NOTE

When "IP Control" is set to "Always On", the unit consumes more standby power.

**3** Launch iTunes and click the AirPlay icon displayed in the lower right of the window and select this unit from the list.

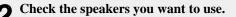


**Choose a song and click play in iTunes.** The music will stream to this unit.

#### Selecting multiple speakers (devices)

It is possible to play iTunes songs on your home's AirPlay compatible speakers (devices) other than those of this unit.

Click the AirPlay icon and select "Multiple Speakers" from the list.



| Multiple Speakers 🗖 🗖 🗖          |    |   |             |  |
|----------------------------------|----|---|-------------|--|
| Master Volume                    | ⊈، | 0 | <b></b> ,)) |  |
| My Computer<br>This Computer     | ¢  | 0 | <b>4</b> )  |  |
| Marantz SR5007<br>AirPlay Device | ۹) | 0 | <b>4</b> ,) |  |

#### **AirPlay function**

# Perform iTunes playback operations with the remote control unit of this unit

With this unit's remote control unit, you can perform iTunes song play, pause, and auto search (cue) operations.

Select "Edit" – "Preferences..." on the menu.

**2** Select "Devices" in the iTunes setting window.

**3** Check "Allow iTunes control from remote speakers", and then click "OK".

| Devices   |                       |  |  |
|---|-----------------------|--|--|
| Ceneral Playback Sharing Store Parental   | Devices Advanced      |  |  |
| Device backups:   | ··                    |  |  |
|   |                       |  |  |
|   |                       |  |  |
|   |                       |  |  |
| [   | Delete <u>B</u> ackup |  |  |
| Prevent iPods, iPhones, and iPads from syncing automatically  Warn when more than 5% of the data on this computer will be changed  Warn victures control from remote speakers |                       |  |  |
| iTunes is not paired with any Remotes   | Forget All Remotes    |  |  |
| Reset Sync History  |                       |  |  |
| ?   | OK Cancel             |  |  |

# ø

- is displayed on the menu screen while AirPlay is being operated.
- Source input will be switched to "NETWORK" when AirPlay playback is started.
- $\bullet$  You can stop AirPlay playback by pressing the  $\triangleleft$  or choosing other input source.
- To see song and artist names together, press **STATUS** on the main unit.
- For information about how to use iTunes, also see the Help for iTunes.
- The screen may differ depending on the OS and software versions.

# **Selecting a listening mode (Sound Mode)**

This unit allows you to enjoy various kinds of surround and stereo playbacks.

Multi-channel audio formats are adopted by many of the contents including Blu-ray disc and DVD as well as digital broadcasting and Internet-delivered movies and music.

This unit supports playback of almost all of these multi-channel audio formats. It also supports surround playback of audio formats other than multi-channel audio such as 2-channel stereo audio.

This unit automatically generates a list of all the playable sound modes based on the input audio format and the current speaker setup configuration and displays the list on the screen. Therefore, you can select a correct surround playback mode even if you are not familiar with sound mode selection. Try out various surround playback modes and enjoy surround playback in your favorite mode.

#### [Example] When MOVIE is pressed and held



This unit provides not only sound modes that conform to the formats recorded in discs such as Dolby and DTS but also extended types of modes that match your speaker configuration including front height speakers and surround back speakers and "original listening modes" that create atmosphere of MULTI CH STEREO and VIRTUAL, etc. The displayed sound modes include the 2-channel stereo playback mode.

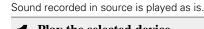
For audio formats recorded in a disc, see the disc jacket.

# Selecting a listening mode

- Play the selected device ( $\bigcirc page 35 \underline{63}$ ).
- 2 Press and hold MOVIE, MUSIC or GAME to select a listening mode. This unit automatically generates and displays a list of selectable sound modes.
- Each time **MOVIE**, **MUSIC** or **GAME** is pressed, the listening mode is switched.
- (MOVE) Switches to the listening mode suitable for enjoying movies and TV programs.
- Music Switches to the listening mode suitable for enjoying music.
- GAME Switches to the listening mode suitable for enjoying games.
- Pressing MOVIE, MUSIC or GAME displays a list of the listening modes that can be selected. Each time you press MOVIE, MUSIC or GAME, the listening mode changes.
- $\bullet$  While the list is displayed, you can also use  $\Delta \nabla$  to select a listening mode.

- The MOVIE, MUSIC, or GAME button memorizes the last sound mode selected for its button. Pressing MOVIE, MUSIC, or GAME recalls the same sound mode as the one selected at the previous playback.
- If the content played back does not support the previously selected sound mode, the most standard sound mode for the content is automatically selected.
- This can also be set by pressing **SOUND MODE** on the main unit.

# **Direct playback**







**2** Press PURE to select "DIRECT". Direct playback begins.

# Pure direct playback

This mode is for playback in higher sound quality than in "DIRECT" mode. Turn the display of the amplifier off to stop the analogue video circuit. This suppresses the source of noise that affects sound quality.

Play the selected device  $(\textcircled{P} page 35 - \underline{63})$ .



#### Press PURE to select "PURE DIRECT On".

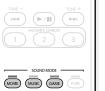
PURE DIRECT indicator on the main unit lights. The display goes dark, and pure direct playback begins.

### ø

- In DIRECT and PURE DIRECT listening mode, the following items cannot be adjusted.
- Tone (107 page 107)
- MultEQ<sup>®</sup> XT (☞ page 109)
- Dynamic EQ (mage 109)
- Dynamic Volume (127 page 110)
- M-DAX (127 page 108)
- This can also be set by pressing **PURE DIRECT** on the main unit.

### NOTE

- Video signals are only output when HDMI signals are played in the PURE DIRECT mode.
- When in the PURE DIRECT mode, the menu screen is not displayed.
- When in the PURE DIRECT mode, the display turns off and appears as if there is no electricity.



# Auto surround playback

This mode detects the type of input digital signal, and automatically selects the corresponding mode for playback.



| Operation<br>button | Input signal   | Listening mode   |
|---------------------|--|--|
| MOVE                | -channel *1<br>Iulti-channel<br>Dolby Digital<br>Dolby TrueHD<br>Dolby Digital<br>Plus | STEREO<br>AUTO *2<br>DOLBY PLIIx Movie *3<br>DOLBY PLII Movie *3<br>DOLBY Pro Logic *3<br>DTS NEO:6 Cinema *3<br>DOLBY PLIIz Height *3<br>MULTI CH STEREO<br>VIRTUAL<br>STEREO<br>AUTO *2<br>DOLBY DIGITAL<br>DOLBY DIGITAL EX<br>DOLBY DIGITAL + PLIIx Movie<br>DOLBY DIGITAL + PLIIx Movie<br>DOLBY DIGITAL + PLIIz<br>DOLBY TrueHD + EX<br>DOLBY TrueHD + PLIIX<br>DOLBY TrueHD + PLIIX<br>DOLBY TrueHD + PLIIX<br>DOLBY TrueHD + PLIIX<br>DOLBY DIGITAL Plus<br>DOLBY DIGITAL Plus<br>DOLBY DIGITAL Plus<br>DOLBY DIGITAL Plus<br>DOLBY DIGITAL Plus + EX<br>DOLBY DIGITAL Plus + PLIIX<br>Movie<br>DOLBY DIGITAL Plus + PLIIX<br>Movie<br>DOLBY DIGITAL Plus + PLIIX<br>DIS SURROUND<br>DTS ES DSCRT 6.1<br>DTS 96/24<br>DTS + NEO:6<br>DTS + PLIIX Movie |
|                     |  | DTS + PLIIz  |

• The following listening modes can be selected using the MOVIE, MUSIC, GAME, and PURE buttons.

• Adjust the sound field effect with the menu "Surround Parameter" (page 106) to enjoy your favorite sound mode.

Listening mode

| Operation<br>button | Input signal  | Listening mode         |
|---------------------|---------------|------------------------|
|                     |               | DTS-HD HI RES          |
|                     |               | DTS-HD MSTR            |
|                     | DTS-HD /      | DTS Express            |
|                     | DTS Express   | DTS-HD + NEO:6         |
|                     |               | DTS-HD + PLIIx Movie   |
|                     |               | DTS-HD + PLIIz         |
| (movie)             |               | MULTI CH IN            |
|                     | PCM multi-    | MULTI CH IN 7.1        |
|                     | channel       | MULTI IN + Dolby EX    |
|                     | channel       | MULTI IN + PLIIx Movie |
|                     |               | MULTI IN + PLIIz       |
|                     | Multi-channel | MULTI CH STEREO        |
|                     | *4            | VIRTUAL                |
| *4                  |               | VIRTUAL                |

**\***1 2-channel also includes analog input.

\*2 When AUTO mode is selected, the sound mode that is compatible with the input signal is used for playback.

\*3 This mode plays back 2-channel source in 5.1 or 7.1-channel playback. It cannot be selected when headphones are used, or when only front speakers are used.

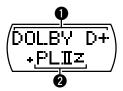
\*4 Some listening modes cannot be selected, depending on the audio format or number of channels of the input signal. For details, see "Types of input signals, and corresponding sound modes" (( page 143).

| Operation<br>button | Input signal   | Listening mode   |
|---------------------|--|--|
|                     | 2-channel *1<br>Multi-channel<br>*4<br>Dolby Digital | STEREO<br>AUTO *2<br>DOLBY PLIIx Music *3<br>DOLBY PLII Music *3<br>DTS NEO:6 Music *3<br>DOLBY PLIIz Height *3<br>MULTI CH STEREO<br>VIRTUAL<br>STEREO<br>AUTO *2<br>DOLBY DIGITAL<br>DOLBY DIGITAL EX<br>DOLBY DIGITAL + PLIIx Music |
|                     | Dolby TrueHD   | DOLBY DIGITAL + PLIIz<br>DOLBY TrueHD<br>DOLBY TrueHD + EX<br>DOLBY TrueHD + PLIIx Music<br>DOLBY TrueHD + PLIIz   |
| MUSIC               | Dolby Digital<br>Plus                                | DOLBY DIGITAL Plus<br>DOLBY DIGITAL Plus + EX<br>DOLBY DIGITAL Plus + EX<br>DOLBY DIGITAL Plus + PLIIx Music<br>DOLBY DIGITAL Plus + PLIIz   |
|                     | DTS  | DTS SURROUND<br>DTS ES DSCRT 6.1<br>DTS ES MTRX 6.1<br>DTS 96/24<br>DTS + NEO:6<br>DTS + PLIIx Music<br>DTS + PLIIz  |
|                     | DTS-HD /<br>DTS Express                              | DTS-HD HI RES<br>DTS-HD MSTR<br>DTS Express<br>DTS-HD + NEO:6<br>DTS-HD + PLIIx Music<br>DTS-HD + PLIIz  |
|                     | PCM multi-<br>channel                                | MULTI CH IN<br>MULTI CH IN 7.1<br>MULTI IN + Dolby EX<br>MULTI IN + PLIIx Music<br>MULTI IN + PLIIz<br>MULTI CH STEREO<br>VIRTUAL  |

| Operation<br>button | Input signal                          | Listening mode  |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------|---|
|                     | 2-channel *1                          | STEREO<br>AUTO *2<br>DOLBY PLIIx Game *3<br>DOLBY PLII Game *3<br>DOLBY PLIIz Height *3<br>MULTI CH STEREO<br>VIRTUAL |
|                     | Multi-channel<br>*4                   | STEREO<br>AUTO *2   |
|                     | Dolby Digital                         | DOLBY DIGITAL<br>DOLBY DIGITAL EX<br>DOLBY DIGITAL + PLIIz  |
|                     | Dolby TrueHD                          | DOLBY TrueHD<br>DOLBY TrueHD + EX<br>DOLBY TrueHD + PLIIz   |
| GAME                | Dolby Digital<br>Plus                 | DOLBY DIGITAL Plus<br>DOLBY DIGITAL Plus + EX<br>DOLBY DIGITAL Plus + PLIIz   |
|                     | DTS                                   | DTS SURROUND<br>DTS ES DSCRT 6.1<br>DTS ES MTRX 6.1<br>DTS 96/24<br>DTS + NEO:6<br>DTS + PLIIz                        |
|                     | DTS-HD /<br>DTS Express<br>DTS-HD + 1 | DTS-HD HI RES<br>DTS-HD MSTR<br>DTS Express<br>DTS-HD + NEO:6<br>DTS-HD + PLIIz                                       |
|                     | PCM multi-<br>channel                 | MULTI CH IN<br>MULTI CH IN 7.1<br>MULTI IN + Dolby EX<br>MULTI IN + PLIIz   |
|                     |                                       | MULTI CH STEREO<br>VIRTUAL  |
| PURE                | All                                   | DIRECT<br>PURE DIRECT<br>AUTO *2  |

- \*1 2-channel also includes analog input.
- \*2 When AUTO mode is selected, the sound mode that is compatible with the input signal is used for playback.
- \*3 This mode plays back 2-channel source in 5.1 or 7.1-channel playback. It cannot be selected when headphones are used, or when only front speakers are used.
- \*4 Some listening modes cannot be selected, depending on the audio format or number of channels of the input signal. For details, see "Types of input signals, and corresponding sound modes" (mppage 143).

## Views on the TV screen or display



**1** Shows a decoder to be used.

• A DOLBY DIGITAL Plus decoder is displayed as "DOLBY D+".

2 Shows a decoder that creates sound output from the surround back speakers.

• "+ PLIIz" indicates the front height sound from front height speakers.

## Description of listening mode types

### Dolby listening mode

| Listening mode type | Description  |
|---------------------|--|
| DOLBY PLIIx*1       | This mode can be selected when a Dolby Pro Logic IIx decoder is used to<br>play back 2-channel source in 6.1/7.1-channel surround sound including the<br>surround back channel.<br>By adding the surround back channel, a stronger surround feeling is obtained<br>compared to Dolby Pro Logic II.<br>There are three playback modes: "Movie" mode that is optimized for movie<br>playback, "Music" mode that is optimized for music playback, and "Game"<br>mode that is optimized for game play. |
| DOLBY PLII          | This mode can be selected when a Dolby Pro Logic II decoder is used to play back 2-channel source in 5.1-channel surround sound with a natural, realistic feel.  |
| DOLBY Pro Logic     | This mode can be selected when a Dolby Pro Logic decoder is used to play 2-channel source in 4.1-channel surround sound (Left/Center/Right/Surround Mono).   |
| DOLBY PLIIz*2       | This mode can be selected when a Dolby Pro Logic IIz decoder is used to play<br>back 2-channel source in 7.1-channel surround sound with added front height<br>channel.<br>By adding a front height channel, the vertical expression is emphasized,<br>improving the three-dimensionality of the sound.  |
| DOLBY DIGITAL       | This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded with Dolby Digital.  |
| DOLBY DIGITAL EX*1  | Using a Dolby Digital EX decoder, this mode plays Dolby Digital source in 6.1/7.1 channel surround sound with added surround back channel.<br>By adding a surround back channel, spacial expressiveness and sound localization are enhanced.   |
| DOLBY TrueHD        | This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in Dolby TrueHD.   |
| DOLBY DIGITAL Plus  | This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded with Dolby Digital Plus.   |

\*1 This can be selected when "Speaker Config." – "Surr. Back" is not set to "None".
\*2 This can be selected when "Speaker Config." – "Front Height" is not set to "None".

## DTS listening mode

| Listening mode type | Description   |
|---------------------|---|
| DTS NEO:6           | This mode can be selected when a DTS NEO:6 decoder is used to play back 2-channel source in 6.1/7.1-channel surround sound including the surround back channel.<br>There is a "Cinema" mode optimized for movie playback, and a "Music" mode optimized for music playback.  |
| DTS SURROUND        | This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in DTS.   |
| DTS ES DSCRT6.1*    | This mode is suitable for playing discs recorded in DTS-ES. The surround back channel added using the discrete method is played as an independent channel. Since all channels are independent, the 360-degree spacial expressiveness and sound localization are enhanced.   |
| DTS ES MTRX6.1*     | This mode is suitable for playing discs recorded in DTS-ES.<br>The surround back channel added to the surround-left and surround-right<br>channels by a matrix encoder at software recording time is decoded by this<br>unit's matrix decoder and played from each channel (surround left, surround<br>right, surround back). |
| DTS 96/24           | This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in DTS 96/24.   |
| DTS-HD              | This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in DTS-HD.  |
| DTS Express         | This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in DTS Express.   |

\* This can be selected when "Speaker Config." – "Surr. Back" is not set to "None".

### PCM multi-channel listening mode

| Listening mode type | Description  |
|---------------------|--|
| MULTI CH IN         | This mode can be selected when playing multi-channel PCM sources . |

# Original listening mode

| Listening mode type | Description   |
|---------------------|---|
| MULTI CH STEREO     | This mode is for enjoying stereo sound from all speakers.<br>The same sound as that from the front speakers (L/R) is played back at the<br>same level from the surround speakers (L/R) and surround back speakers (L/R).  |
| VIRTUAL             | This mode is for enjoying surround effects using only the front speakers or headphones.   |
| AUTO                | In this mode, the type of digital signal input, such as Dolby Digital, Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Digital Plus, DTS, DTS-HD, PCM (multi-channel) is detected, and the playback mode switches automatically to the corresponding mode. If the input signal is analog or PCM (2-channel), stereo playback is used. |

# STEREO listening mode

| Listening mode type | Description   |
|---------------------|---|
| STEREO              | <ul> <li>This is the mode for playing in stereo. The tone can be adjusted.</li> <li>Sound is output from the front left and right speakers and subwoofer.</li> <li>If multichannel signals are input, they are mixed down to 2-channel audio and are played.</li> </ul> |

# Direct listening mode

| Listening mode type | Description  |
|---------------------|--|
| DIRECT              | Sound recorded in source is played as is.                                      |
| PURE DIRECT         | This mode is for playback in higher sound quality than in DIRECT mode.         |
|                     | Turn the display of the amplifier off to stop the analogue video circuit. This |
|                     | suppresses the source of noise that affects sound quality.                     |



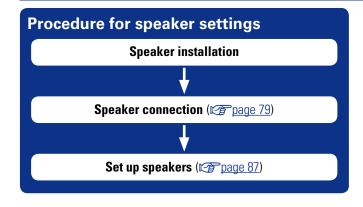
# **Advanced version**

Here, we explain functions and operations that let you make better use of this unit.

Installation/connection/setup of speakers (Advanced) 27 page 77

- Connections (Advanced connection) 2 page 89
- Playback (Advanced operation) 2 page 91
- Playback in ZONE2 (Separate room) 
   <u>Page 98</u>
- How to make detailed settings page 100

# Installation/connection/setup of speakers (Advanced)



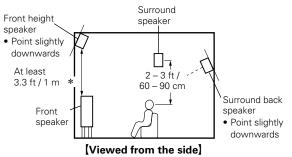
# **Speaker installation**

• Determine the speaker system depending on the number of speakers you are using and install each speaker and subwoofer in the room. Here, we explain how to install the speakers using a typical example.

 $\bullet$  The speaker impedance should be from 6 to 8  $\Omega.$ 

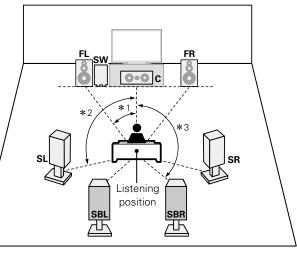
### 

Use the illustration below as a guide for how high each speaker should be installed. The height does not need to be exactly the same.



\* Recommended for Dolby Pro Logic IIz

# When 7.1ch speakers are installed using surround back speakers



**<sup>\*</sup>**1 22° – 30° **\***2 90° – 110° **\***3 135° – 150°

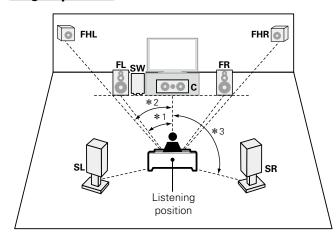
#### NOTE

You cannot have audio output from the surround back speakers and front height speakers simultaneously.

#### (Speaker abbreviations) (L) SL Surround

- FL Front speaker (L)
- FR Front speaker (R)
- **C** Center speaker
- SW Subwoofer
- SL Surround speaker (L) SR Surround speaker (R) SBL Surround back speaker (L)
- SBL Surround back speaker (L)
- SBR Surround back speaker (R)

# When 7.1ch speakers are installed using front height speakers



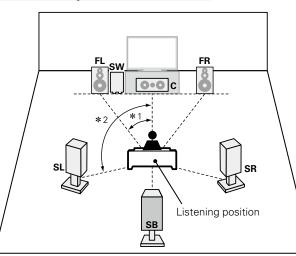
**\***1 22° - 30° **\***2 22° - 45° **\***3 90° - 110°

### [Speaker abbreviations]

FHR Front height speaker (R)

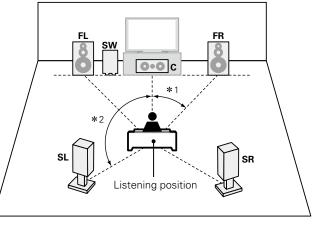
- FLFront speaker (L)SBSurround back speakerFRFront speaker (R)FHLFront height speaker (L)
- **C** Center speaker
- SW Subwoofer
- **SL** Surround speaker (L)
- SR Surround speaker (R)

### When 6.1ch speakers are installed



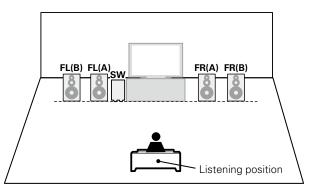
**\***1 22° - 30° **\***2 90° - 110°

### When 5.1ch speakers are installed



**\***1 22° – 30° **\***2 120°

### When Front A/B speakers are installed



# **Speaker connection**

Here, we connect the speakers in the room to this unit. This section explains how to connect them using a typical example.

- Connecting 7.1-channel speakers using surround back speakers (*page 80*)
- Connecting 7.1-channel speakers using front height speakers (<u>Page 81</u>)
- Connecting 6.1-channel speakers using one surround back speaker (2 page 82)
- □ Connecting 5.1-channel speakers (mpage 83)
- Connecting front A/B speakers ( page 84)
- Connecting 2.1-channel speakers ( page 85)
- Connecting front speakers with a bi-amp connection (2 page 86)

### NOTE

- Disconnect this unit's power plug from the power outlet before connecting the speakers. Also, turn off the subwoofer.
- Connect so that the speaker cable core wires do not protrude from the speaker terminal. The protection circuit may be activated if the core wires touch the rear panel or if the + and sides touch each other (page 148 "Protection Circuit").
- Never touch the speaker terminals while the power supply is connected. Doing so could result in electric shock. When the "Setup Assistant" is running, follow the instructions in the "Setup Assistant" screen for making connections. (Power is not supplied to the speaker terminals while the "Setup Assistant" is running.)

#### • Use speakers with the speaker impedances shown below.

| Speaker terminals | Speaker impedance |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| FRONT             |                   |
| CENTER            | 6 – 8 Ω           |
| SURROUND          |                   |
| SURROUND BACK     |                   |

# **Connecting the speaker cables**

Carefully check the left (L) and right (R) channels and + (red) and – (black) polarities on the speakers being connected to this unit, and be sure to interconnect the channels and polarities correctly.

- **1** Peel off about 0.03 ft/10 mm of sheathing from the tip of the speaker cable, then either twist the core wire tightly or terminate it.
- **2** Turn the speaker terminal counterclockwise to loosen it.



ے

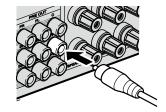
**3** Insert the speaker cable's core wire to the hilt into the speaker terminal.



**T** Turn the speaker terminal clockwise to tighten it.

## **Connecting the subwoofer**

Use a subwoofer cable to connect the subwoofer.

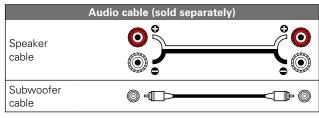


# **Connecting 7.1-channel speakers using surround back speakers**

The illustration on the right shows a connection example for performing 7.1-channel playback using the surround back speakers.

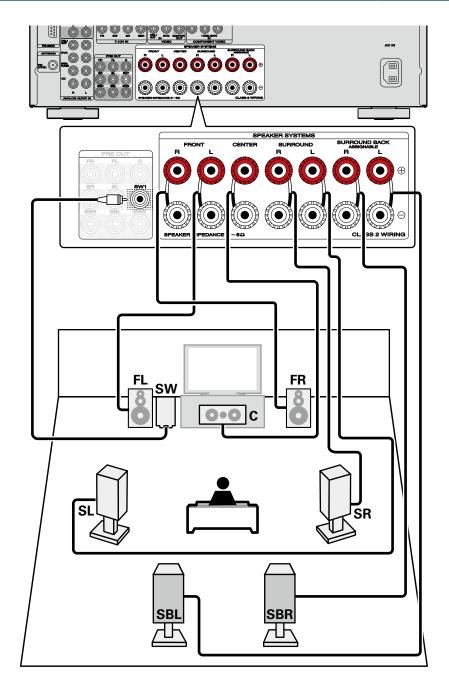
If you connect the surround back and front height speakers before you start playback, the audio is played back by automatically switching the speakers in accordance with the sound mode or input signals. To perform 7.1-channel playback using the surround back speakers, set "Assign Mode" to "Surround Back" in steps 3 to 5 for "Set up "Amp Assign"" (127 page 87).

### **Cables used for connections**





- For speaker cable connections, see page 79.
- For speaker impedance , see page 79.

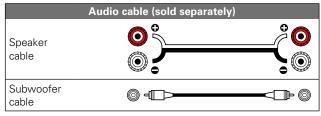


# **Connecting 7.1-channel speakers using front height speakers**

The illustration on the right shows a connection example for performing 7.1-channel playback using the front height speakers.

If you connect the surround back and front height speakers before you start playback, the audio is played back by automatically switching the speakers in accordance with the sound mode or input signals. To perform 7.1-channel playback using the front height speaker, set "Assign Mode" to "Front Height" in steps 3 to 5 for "Set up "Amp Assign" (Front Height).

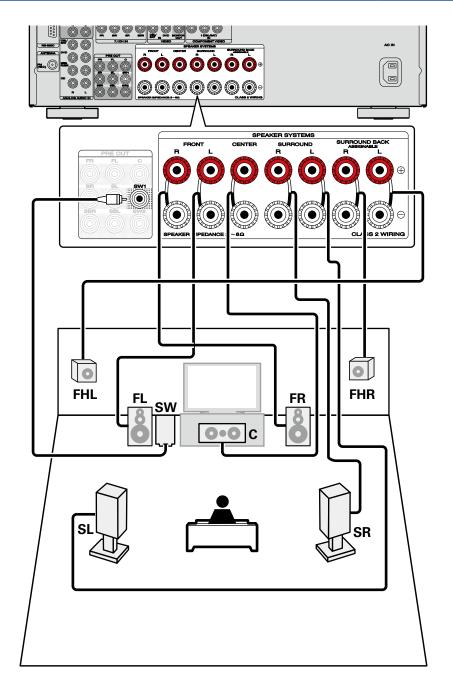
## **Cables used for connections**





• For speaker cable connections, see page 79.

• For speaker impedance , see page 79.

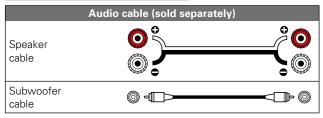


# Connecting 6.1-channel speakers using one surround back speaker

If using only one surround back speaker, connect to the "L" side of the SURROUND BACK terminal. For speaker settings in this case, see "When 6.1ch speakers are installed" (<u>Page 78</u>). To perform 6.1-channel playback using the surround back speaker, set "Assign Mode" to "Surround Back" in steps 3 to 5 for "Set up "Amp Assign"" (<u>Page 87</u>).

Also use the "Speaker Config." setting (page 122) to set "Surr. Back" to "1spkr".

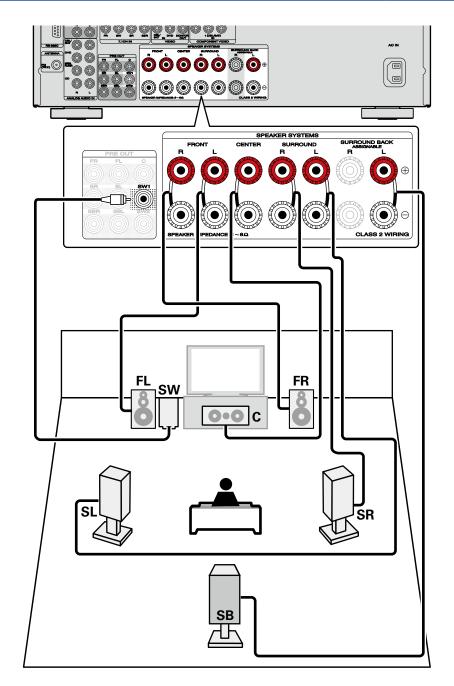
### Cables used for connections





• For speaker cable connections, see page 79.

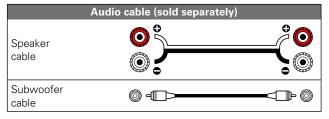
• For speaker impedance , see page 79.



# **Connecting 5.1-channel speakers**

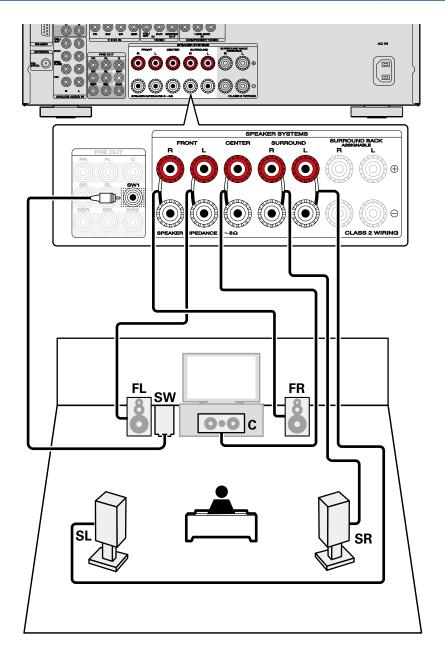
To perform 5.1-channel playback, set "Assign Mode" to "Surround Back" in steps 3 to 5 for "Set up "Amp Assign"" (27 page 87).

## **Cables used for connections**





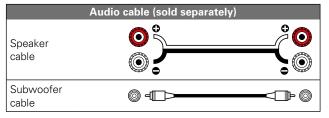
- For speaker cable connections, see page 79.
- For speaker impedance , see page 79.



# **Connecting front A/B speakers**

You can connect a second set of speakers to this unit and use them for playback. In this case, set "Assign Mode" to "Front B" in steps 3 to 5 for "Set up "Amp Assign"" (Page 87).

### **Cables used for connections**



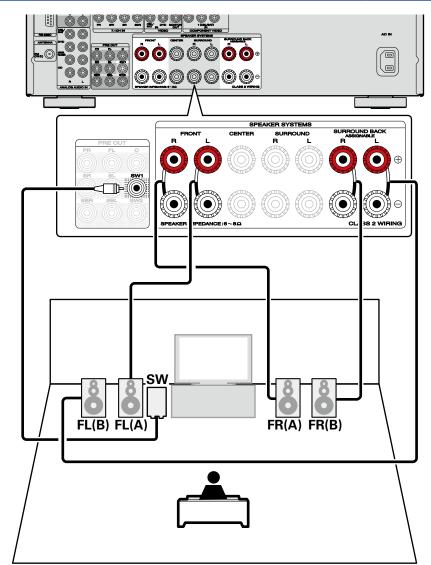
# 

For multichannel playback, connect center, surround, surround back, and front speakers and a subwoofer. Front speakers can be used separately, depending on the speaker's specifications or playback source such as front speakers (A) for multichannel playback and front speakers (B) for 2-channel playback (<u>Eprage 123</u> "Front Speaker").

#### NOTE

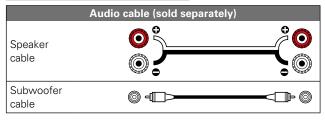
• For speaker cable connections, see page 79.

• For speaker impedance , see page 79.



# **Connecting 2.1-channel speakers**

### **Cables used for connections**

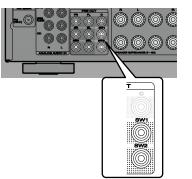


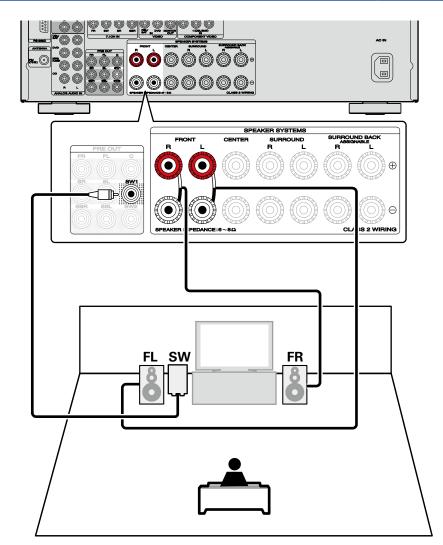
### NOTE

- For speaker cable connections, see page 79.
- For speaker impedance , see page 79.

### **□** For connecting two subwoofers

Two subwoofers can be connected to this unit. The same signal is output from each subwoofer terminal.





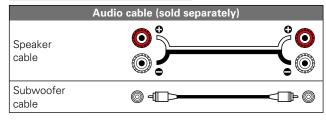
# Connecting front speakers with a bi-amp connection

• You cannot use surround back speakers in a bi-amp connection. Use front speakers that support a bi-amp connection and connect the speakers to the FRONT speaker terminals and the SURROUND BACK speaker terminals.

In this case, set "Assign Mode" to "SPKR-C" in steps 3 to 5 for "Set up "Amp Assign"" (@page 87).

 A bi-amp connection is to connect separate amplifiers to the tweeter terminals and woofer terminals of speakers compatible with the bi-amp function. This prevents the back electromotive force (returned force without output) of the woofer sent to the tweeter, which affects the sound quality of the tweeter, and you can enjoy playback with higher-quality sound.

### **Cables used for connections**



# ø

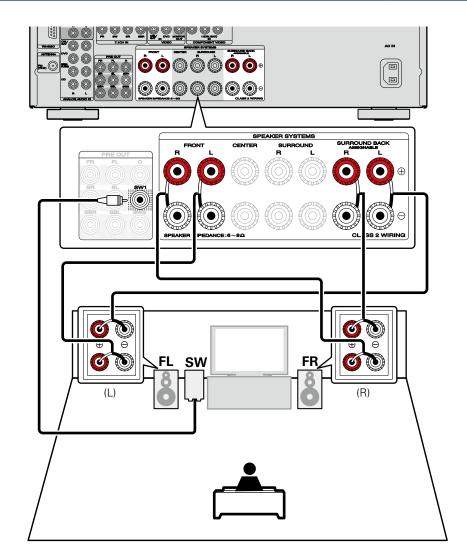
For multichannel playback, connect front, center, surround, and surround back speakers and a subwoofer.

#### NOTE

• For speaker cable connections, see page 79.

#### • For speaker impedance , see page 79.

• When making bi-amp connections, be sure to remove the short-circuiting plate or wire between the speaker's woofer and tweeter terminals.



# Set up speakers

First install and connect the speakers to this unit.

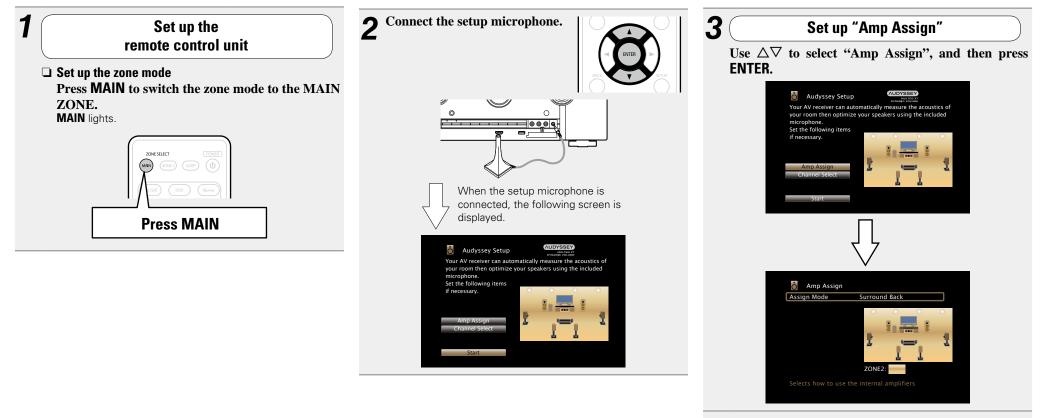
Before Audyssey<sup>®</sup> Setup measurement, the settings shown below can be made.

• Changing the amplifier assignment (Amp Assign)

The signal output from the SURROUND BACK speaker terminal of this unit can be switched to match your speaker environment (2 page 87 "Set up "Amp Assign"").

• Setting the channels to be used (Channel Select)

If channels that are not to be used are set in advance, measurement for the set channels is skipped, and measuring time can be reduced. You can also change the number of surround back speakers (1) page 88 "Set up "Channel Select"").



**4** Select "Assign Mode", and then press **ENTER**.

| Configura  | ▷ to select the ation of the connected , and then press ENTER.                                  |  |  |
|--|---|--|--|
| Surround Back  | Setting for 7.1-channel playback using surround back speakers.                                  |  |  |
| ZONE2  | Setting to assign the unit's built-in power amplifier for ZONE2 and output the audio in stereo. |  |  |
| SPKR-C   | Setting to use the front speakers via the bi-amp connection.                                    |  |  |
| Front B  | Setting to use the second set of front speakers for playback.                                   |  |  |
| Front Height   | Setting for 7.1-channel playback using front height speakers.                                   |  |  |
| <b>6</b> Press <\le or <b>BACK</b> to exit the "Amp Assign" setting. |   |  |  |

| -                |   |
|------------------|---|
| 7                | Set up "Channel Select"   |
| Use △<br>ENTEI   | $a \nabla$ to select "Channel Select", and then press R.  |
|                  | Mutysey Setup         Survey on the optimize your speakers using the included inc |
|                  | $\nabla$ to select a channel, and then press <b>ENTER</b> .   |
| 8 Use Z          |   |
| Front            | Select for setting the front speakers to be used. In this   |
|                  | <ul><li>case, go to step 9.</li><li>"Front" can be set when "Assign Mode" is set to<br/>"Front B".</li></ul>  |
| Subwoofer        | Select for no subwoofers to be used. In this case, go to step 10.   |
| Surround<br>Back | Select the number of surround back speakers to be<br>used. In this case, go to step 11.<br>• "Surround Back" can be set when "Assign Mode" is   |
|                  | set to "Surround Back".   |

| Α   | Select this to use front speaker A.   |  |  |
|---|---|--|--|
| В   | Select this to use front speaker B.   |  |  |
| A+B   | Select this to use front speakers A and B simultaneously  |  |  |
| $\mathbf{A}$ Use $\lhd$ $\triangleright$ to set whether or not a subwoofer channel is |   |  |  |
| • mea   | sured, and then press ENTER.  |  |  |
| Neasure   | Set for measuring a subwoofer.  |  |  |
|   | <b>a</b>  |  |  |
| Skip<br>1 Use<br>char   | Set for no measuring of a subwoofer.<br>$\triangleleft \triangleright$ to set whether or not a surround back<br>onel is measured, and then press ENTER. |  |  |
| 1 Use   | $\triangleleft \triangleright$ to set whether or not a surround back  |  |  |
| 1 Use<br>char<br>Measure  | $\triangleleft \triangleright$ to set whether or not a surround back<br>anel is measured, and then press ENTER.   |  |  |

### 

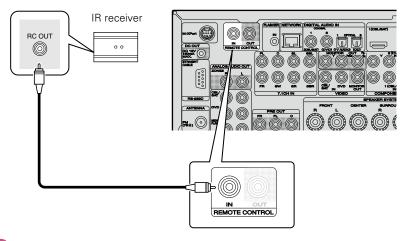
After performing Audyssey<sup>®</sup> Setup, do not change the speaker connections or subwoofer volume. In event of a change, perform Audyssey<sup>®</sup> Setup again.

# **Connections (Advanced connection)**

# **Connecting the REMOTE CONTROL connectors**

## Performing operations on this unit and external devices

- You can connect an IR receiver to this unit to perform operations on this unit and external devices with the supplied remote control unit.
- To do this, disable the remote control signal receiving function (page 96 "Remote lock function").

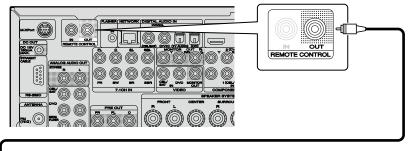


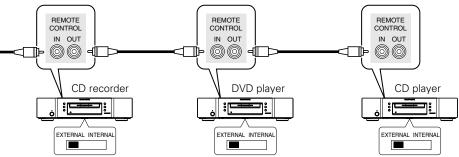
### NOTE

When not connecting an IR receiver, make sure to enable the remote control signal receiving function. When the function is disabled, you can not perform operations with the remote control unit.

# **Remotely connecting marantz devices**

- When you are using a marantz device other than this unit that supports remote connection, an IR receiver is not necessary.
- You can transmit remote control signals just by connecting the device to the REMOTE CONTROL IN/ OUT connector with a monaural cable.
- Set the remote control switch located on the rear panel of the connected audio component to "EXTERNAL" or "EXT." to use this feature.
- If a marantz power amplifier (excluding certain models is connected to any of these connectors, the power of the power amplifier switches to on/standby in conjunction with the **ON/STANDBY** button of the this unit.





# **Connecting an external control device**

(such as power supply operation, volume adjustment, and input source switching).

# **RS-232C** connector

External serial controller

When you connect an external control device, you can control this unit with the external control device

Perform the operation below beforehand.

① Turn on the power of this unit.

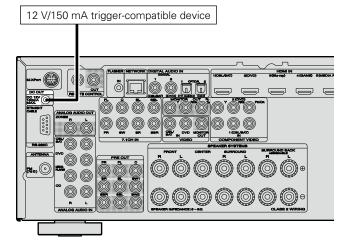
2 Turn off the power of this unit from the external controller.

 $\overline{\mathfrak{3}}$  Check that the unit is in the standby mode.

# DC OUT jacks

When a device with DC IN jack is connected, the connected device's power on/standby can be controlled through linked operation to this unit.

The DC OUT jack outputs a maximum 12 V/150 mA electrical signal.





• Use the monaural mini-plug cable for connecting DC OUT jacks. Do not use the stereo mini-plug cable.

• If the permissible trigger input level for the connected device is larger than 12 V/150 mA, or has shorted, the DC OUT jack cannot be used. In this case, turn off the power to the unit, and disconnect it.

# **Playback (Advanced operation)**

#### Setup ( page 27)

Playback (Basic operation) (page 34)

#### Selecting a listening mode (Sound Mode) (<u>page 71</u>)

Connections (Advanced connection) (
page 89)

- □ HDMI control function (☞ page 91)
- □ Sleep timer function (☞ page 92)
- U Web control function (<u>page 93</u>)
- Dual backup memory function (<u>Page 95</u>)
- □ Panel lock function (<sup>™</sup> page 95)
- □ **Remote lock function** (<u>Page 96</u>)
- □ Various memory functions (mppage 97)

# **HDMI** control function

If you connect the unit and an HDMI control function compatible TV or player with an HDMI cable and then enable the HDMI control function setting on each device, the devices will be able to control each other.

### **Operations possible by HDMI control**

- This unit power off can be linked to the TV power off step.
- You can switch audio output devices with a TV operation. When you set "Output audio from amp" in the TV audio output setup operation, you can switch the amp power on.
- You can adjust this unit volume in the TV volume adjustment operation.
- You can switch this unit input sources through linkage to TV input switching.
- When playing the player, this unit input source switches to the source for that player.
- If you switch the input source of the unit to "TV AUDIO", you can play TV audio with this unit (<u>page 8</u> "About ARC (Audio Return Channel) function").
- When "HDMI Control" (page 112) in the menu is set to "On", signals input to the HDMI input connector are output to the television or other device connected to the HDMI output connector, even if the power of this unit is in standby (passthrough function).

## **A**

- To use this unit to play the audio of a TV that does not support the ARC function, connect the TV with an optical-digital or analog connection (27 page 8).
- To use the pass-through function, connect an HDMI connection device that is compatible with HDMI control.

### ❑ Setting procedure

- Set the HDMI output connector corresponding with
- the HDMI control function.

Set "HDMI Control" (mpage 112) to "On".

**2** Turn the power on for all the devices connected by HDMI cable.

- **3** Set the HDMI control function for all devices connected by HDMI cable.
- Please consult the operating instructions for the connected devices to check the settings.
- Carry out steps 2 and 3 should any of the devices be unplugged.

Switch the television input to the HDMI input connected to this unit.

**5** Switch this unit input to the HDMI input source and check if the picture from the player is ok.

**6** When you turn the TV's power to standby, check that the power of this unit also goes to standby.

### ø

If the HDMI control function does not operate properly, check the following points.

- Is the TV or player compatible with the HDMI control function?
- Is "HDMI Control" (mpage 112) set to "On"?
- Is "Power Off Control" (page 113) set to "All" or "Video"?
- Are the HDMI control function settings of all devices correct?

#### HDMI control function

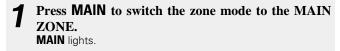
#### NOTE

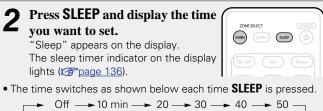
- When "HDMI Control" is set to "On", it consumes more standby power.
- The HDMI control function controls operations of a TV that is compatible with the HDMI control function. Make sure that the TV and HDMI are connected when you perform HDMI control.
- Some functions may not operate depending on the connected TV or player. Check the owner's manual of each device for details beforehand.
- When "Power Off Control" on the menu is set to "Off" (1) page 113), this unit is not set to standby even if the connected device is in the standby mode.
- When connection changes are implemented, such as adding connections to HDMI devices, linked operations may be initialized. In this case, you will need to reconfigure the settings.
- Should any of the operations below be performed, the interlocking function may be reset, in which case, repeat steps 2 and 3.
- There is a change to the connection between the devices and the HDMI, or an increase in devices.

• You can have the power automatically switched to standby once a set time has elapsed. This is convenient for viewing and listening while going to sleep.

**Sleep timer function** 

• The sleep timer function can be set for each zone (CP page 99 "Sleep timer function"). (The MAIN ZONE setting method is explained here.)





To confirm the countdown time before putting the

└\_\_\_\_\_\_120 ◀\_\_\_110 ◀\_\_\_100 ◀\_\_\_90 ◀\_\_\_ 80 ◀\_\_\_ 70 ◀\_\_\_ 60 ◀\_\_\_

#### unit to sleep

Press SLEEP.

"Sleep \*min" appears on the display. \* Countdown time

### To cancel the sleep timer

Press **SLEEP** to set "Off". "Sleep **\***min" appears on the display.

### ø

- The sleep timer setting is canceled if this unit's power is set to standby.
- The sleep timer function can be set separately for the different zones (137 page 99 "Sleep timer function").

#### NOTE

The sleep timer function cannot turn off the power of devices connected to this unit. To turn off the power of those connected devices, set up sleep timers on the connected devices themselves.

# Web control function

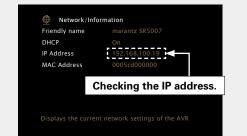
You can control this unit from a web control screen on a web browser.

## ø

- This unit and the PC need to be connected to the network properly (27 page 25 "Connecting to a home network (LAN)") in order to use the web control function.
- Depending on the settings of your security-related software, you may not be able to access this unit from your PC. If this is the case, then change the settings of the security-related software.

**1** Switch the "IP Control" setting to "Always On" (<u>Page 125</u>).

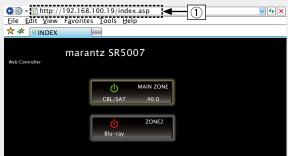
**2** Check the IP address of this unit with "Information" (<u>Page 125</u>).



**3** Start up the web browser.

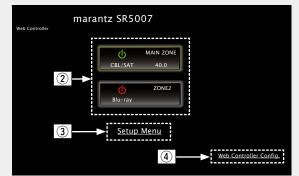
# Enter the IP address of this unit in browser's address box.

For example, if the IP address of this unit is "192.168.100.19", enter "http://192.168.100.19/".

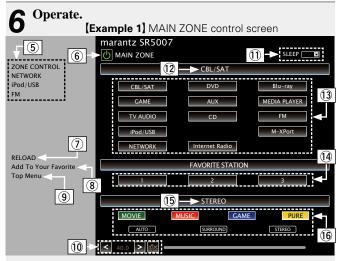


- ① Entering the IP address.
- By adding this unit's IP address to the browser's bookmark, you can display the web control screen using the bookmark function the next time you use the browser. If you are using a DHCP server and "IP Control" (@page 125) is set to "Off In Standby", turning the power on/off changes the IP address.

# **5** When the top menu is displayed, click on the menu item you want to operate.



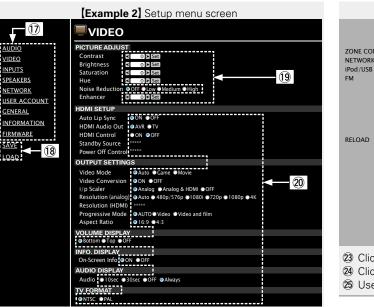
- (2) Click when you select the zone to operate. ((2) [Example 1])
- ③ Click when you operate the setup menu.
- ④ Click to change the Web control screen setting.
   (@[Example 3])



(5) Click the menu item from which you want to make settings. The display on the right becomes the individual setting screens. (CP [Example 4])

- 6 Click when you perform a power operation of the unit.
- ⑦ Click when you update to the latest information. Normally, there is a change to the latest information each time you operate. When operating from the main unit, click this or else the screen will not be updated.
- ③ Click to add a setting to "Favorites" in your browser. We recommend registering the setting screens for the different zones in the browser's favorites so as not to accidentally perform menu operations for zones you do not intend to operate.
- (9) Click to return to the top menu. Displayed when setting "Top Menu Link Setup" to "ON" in [Example 3]
- 10 To adjust the main volume, click "<", ">", or the volume display.
- ① Click "v" to set the sleep timer function.
- 1 Displays the name of the selected input source.
- (13) Click a button to change the input source.
- (1) Register your favorite content.
- (15) Displays the sound mode.
- (6) The sound mode switches each time you click the button.

#### Web control function



| [Example 4] Network audio operating screen |                           |                |                |  |
|--|---------------------------|----------------|----------------|--|
| NTROL                                      | NETWORK (MAIN ZONE)       |                |                |  |
|  | Network                   | 24             |                |  |
|  | ,                         |                |                |  |
|  | Favorites                 | Internet Radio | ((SiriusXM)))  |  |
|  | PANDORA<br>internet radio | Media Server   | flick <b>r</b> |  |
| -  |                           |                |                |  |
|  |                           | - 25           |                |  |
|  | < 40.0 > dx               |                |                |  |
|  |                           |                |                |  |
| k to return to                             | the previous scre         | en             |                |  |

② Click to return to the previous screen.
④ Click the content you want to operate.
④ Use to operate content.

- ⑦ Click the menu item from which you want to make settings. The display on the right becomes the individual setting screens.
- (1) Click "SAVE" when you want to save settings, and click "LOAD" when you want to call settings.
- (9) Enter figures or click "<" or ">" to make the setting, and then click "Set".
- 20 Click an item to make a setting.

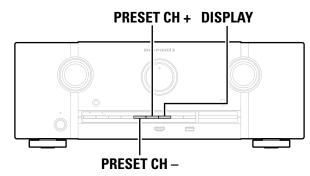
#### **[Example 3]** Web configuration screen



- Olick "ON" when performing Top Menu Link Setup.
   When set up, return to the top menu from each operation screen.
   (Default setting : "OFF")
- 2 Click this item to return to the top menu.

# **Dual backup memory function**

The unit stores settings information in nonvolatile memory even when the main power supply is turned off. Using the Dual Backup Memory function, you can write settings information to another memory area to back up saved settings for recovery anytime as needed. Remembering set details (Backup).



## **Remembering set details (Backup)**

# Set the unit in the state you want remembering, and press and hold **PRESET CH** + and **PRESET CH** – for at least 3 seconds.

"MEMORY SAVING" is shown in the display, and the setting details are remembered.

### NOTE

- The volume is not remembered.
- If remembered details are overwritten, the previously remembered contents are deleted.

# □ Recalling remembered details (Recovery)

### Press and hold **PRESET CH +** and **DISPLAY** together for at least 3 seconds.

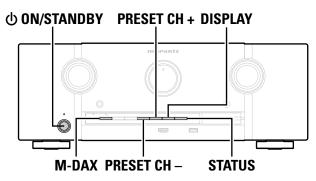
"MEMORY LOAD" is shown in the display, and the remembered details are recalled.

## NOTE

- If there is no remembered data, "NO BACKUP" is shown in the display, and no remembered details are recalled.
- As the volume cannot be recalled, it returns to the factory setting volume.

# **Panel lock function**

To prevent accidental operation of this unit, you can disable operation of the buttons on the front panel.



### Disabling all key button operations

- **1** Press **(b)** ON/STANDBY while you press and hold DISPLAY and M-DAX with the unit in standby mode.
- **2** Press **PRESET CH** + or **PRESET CH** to select "P/V LOCK On".

### **?** Press **STATUS** to enter the setting.

All button operations except **O ON/STANDBY** are disabled.

## Disabling all button operations except VOLUME

- **1** Press () ON/STANDBY while you press and hold DISPLAY and M-DAX with the unit in standby mode.
- **2** Press **PRESET CH** + or **PRESET CH** to select "FP LOCK On".
- **3** Press STATUS to enter the setting. All button operations except () ON/STAN
- All button operations except () ON/STANDBY and VOLUME are disabled.

#### Panel lock function

## **Canceling the Panel lock function**

Press () ON/STANDBY while you press and hold DISPLAY and M-DAX with the unit in standby mode.

- Press PRESET CH + or PRESET CH to select "FP LOCK \*Off". 2
  - (\* The currently set mode.)

Press **STATUS** to enter the setting.

J The Panel lock function is canceled.

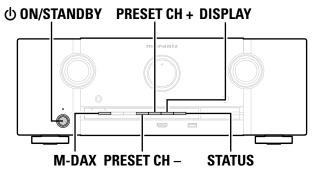
ø

9

Even when the Panel lock function is set, you can operate the unit using the remote control unit.

# **Remote lock function**

- When not connecting an IR receiver, disable the Remote lock function. When the function is enabled, you can not perform operations with the remote control unit.
- By default, this function is disabled.



Disabling the sensor function of the remote control unit

- When the main unit is in standby mode, press **(b)** ON/STANDBY while holding down **DISPLAY** and **M-DAX** on the main unit.
- Press PRESET CH + or PRESET CH to select "RC LOCK On".
- 3 Press **STATUS** to enter the setting.
- The infrared light receiving function is disabled.

### **Enabling the remote sensor function**

- When the main unit is in standby mode, press **(b)** ON/STANDBY while holding down **DISPLAY** and **M-DAX** on the main unit.
- Press PRESET CH + or PRESET CH to select "RC LOCK \*Off". (\* The currently set mode.)
- 3 Press STATUS to enter the setting. The infrared light receiving function on the main unit is enabled.

# Various memory functions

# Personal memory plus function

This function sets the settings (input mode, sound mode, HDMI output mode, MultEQ<sup>®</sup> XT, Dynamic EQ, audio delay etc.) last selected for the individual input sources.

# ø

The surround parameters, tone settings and the volumes of the different speakers are stored for the individual sound modes.

## Last function memory

This function stores the settings which were made before going into the standby mode. When the power is turned back on, the settings are restored.

# Playback in ZONE2 (Separate room)

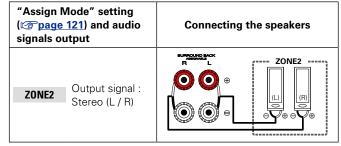
- You can operate this unit so as to enjoy audio in a room (ZONE2) other than the MAIN ZONE (room where the unit is located).
- You can simultaneously play back the same source in both the MAIN ZONE and ZONE2. You can also play back separate sources in the MAIN ZONE and ZONE2.

# Audio output

# Zone playback by speaker output

- Set the "Assign Mode" (Cppage 121) setting to "ZONE2", and outputs ZONE2 audio from SURROUND BACK speaker terminals (The default setting is "ZONE2").

### $\Box$ Connecting and setting the speakers



# NOTE

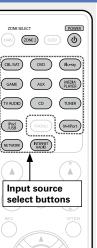
It is not possible to play the digital audio signals input from the HDMI, COAXIAL or OPTICAL connectors in ZONE2. Play using analog connections (in stereo).

# Playback

- Press ZONE2 to switch the zone mode to the ZONE2. ZONE2 lights.
- **Press POWER** to turn on the **ZONE2 power.** "ZONE2 ON" appears on the display.
  - "ZONE2 ON" appears on the display. The indicator on the display lights (13) page 136).
- Also press input source select button when in standby mode, the power turns on.
- When **POWER (**) is pressed, ZONE2 turns off.
- Power in ZONE2 can be turned on or off by pressing **ZONE2 ON/OFF** on the main unit.
- **3** Press the input source select button to select the input source to be played. The audio signal of the selected source
  - is output to ZONE2.
- To perform an operation with the main unit, press **ZONE2 SOURCE** many times. Each time you press **ZONE2 SOURCE**, the input source changes.

Ø

When power for both MAIN ZONE and ZONE2 is set to ON, power of the MAIN ZONE only can be turned off. In Step 1, press **MAIN** and **POWER Φ** in this order.



## Adjusting the volume

Use **VOLUME**  $\blacksquare$  to adjust the volume.



## [Adjustable range] 0 – 40 – 98

(When the "Scale" (page 108) setting is "0 - 98")

#### [Adjustable range] --- -79dB - -40dB - 18dB

(When the "Scale" (page 108) setting is "-79.5dB - 18.0dB")
At time of purchase, "Volume Limit" (page 129) is set to "70 (-10dB)".

## đ

Turn **VOLUME** after pressing **ZONE2 ON/OFF** on the main unit to adjust the sound volume.

### **Turning off the sound temporarily**

#### Press MUTE 4×.

The sound is reduced to the level set at "Mute Level" (Page 129) in the menu.

- To cancel, either adjust the volume or press **MUTE**  $\mathbf{q} \times$  again.
- The setting can also be cancelled by adjusting the volume or turning off the ZONE2 power.

## ø

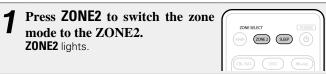
You can adjust the tone and volume for ZONE2 in "ZONE2 Setup" (rppage 129) in the menu.



98

# **Sleep timer function**

- This is convenient for viewing and listening while going to sleep in ZONE2.
- The sleep timer function can be set by zone.



# **2** Press **SLEEP** and display the time you want to set.

• The time switches as shown below each time **SLEEP** is pressed.

| ← Off → 10 min →                      | 20 — | 30 — | 40 — | 50 — |
|---------------------------------------|------|------|------|------|
| ← Off → 10 min →<br>120 ← 110 ← 100 ← | 90 🖛 | 80 🖛 | 70 🖛 | 60 🚽 |

# To confirm the countdown time before putting the unit to sleep

#### Press SLEEP.

"Z2 Sleep \*min" appears on the display.

\* Countdown time

### To cancel the sleep timer

Press SLEEP to set "Off".

# 

The sleep timer is also cancelled when this unit is set to the standby mode or the ZONE2 power is turned off.

#### NOTE

The sleep timer function cannot turn off the power of devices connected to this unit. To turn off the power of those connected devices, set up sleep timers on the connected devices themselves.

# How to make detailed settings

# Menu map

For menu operation, connect a TV to this unit and display the menu on the TV screen. For menu operations, see the following page. By default, this unit has recommended settings defined. You can customize this unit based on your existing system and your preferences.

| Setting items | Detailed items     | Description  | Page       |
|---------------|--------------------|--|------------|
|               | Surround Parameter | Adjusts surround sound parameters.   | <u>106</u> |
|               | Tone               | Adjusts the tonal quality of the sound.  | <u>107</u> |
| Audio         | Dialogue Level     | Sets the output level to clarify the dialogue output from the center channel.  | <u>107</u> |
|               | Subwoofer Level    | Sets the subwoofer on/off and its output level.  |            |
|               | M-DAX              | Expands the low and high frequency components of compressed audio to enable richer audio playback.   | <u>108</u> |
|               | Audio Delay        | Compensates for incorrect timing between video and audio.  | <u>108</u> |
|               | Volume             | Set the MAIN ZONE (room where the unit is located) volume setting.   | <u>108</u> |
|               | Audyssey           | Makes Audyssey MultEQ <sup>®</sup> XT, Audyssey<br>Dynamic EQ <sup>®</sup> and Audyssey Dynamic Volume <sup>®</sup><br>settings.   |            |
|               | Graphic EQ         | Uses the graphic equalizer to adjust the tone of each speaker.   | <u>110</u> |
|               | Picture Adjust     | Adjusts the picture quality.   | <u>112</u> |
|               | HDMI Setup         | Makes settings for HDMI video/audio output.  | <u>112</u> |
|               | Output Settings    | Makes screen-related settings.   |            |
| Video         | Volume Display     | Sets where to display the master volume level.   |            |
|               | Info Display       | Displays status of operation temporarily when<br>the sound mode is changed, or input source is<br>switched. You can set whether or not to show<br>each of these status displays. | <u>114</u> |
|               | Audio Display      | Sets how long each menu is displayed when the input source is "NETWORK", "iPod/USB", or "FM".  |            |
|               | TV Format          | Set the video signal format to be output for the TV you are using.   | <u>115</u> |

| Setting items | Detailed items              | Description  | Page          |
|---------------|-----------------------------|--|---------------|
|               | Input Assign                | Changes input connector assignment.  | <u>117</u>    |
|               | Source Rename               | Changes the display name for this source.  | <u>118</u>    |
| Hide Sources  |                             | Remove from the display input sources that are not used.   | <u>118</u>    |
|               | Source Level                | Adjusts the playback level of the audio input.   | <u>119</u>    |
|               | Input Select                | Sets the audio input mode and decode mode.   | <u>119</u>    |
|               | Video Source                | Video of another input source is played back combined with the playing audio.  | <u>119</u>    |
| Ô             | Audyssey <sup>®</sup> Setup | The acoustic characteristics of the connected speakers and listening room are measured and the optimum settings are made automatically.    | <u>27, 87</u> |
| Speakers      | Manual Setup                | Perform when setting the speakers manually<br>or when changing settings made in Audyssey <sup>®</sup><br>Setup.                            | <u>121</u>    |
|               | Information                 | Display network information.   | <u>125</u>    |
|               | IP Control                  | Set the network function on/off during standby.  | <u>125</u>    |
| Network       | Friendly Name               | The Friendly Name is the name of this unit<br>displayed on the network. You can change the<br>Friendly Name according to your preferences. | <u>125</u>    |
|               | Settings                    | Make settings for wired LAN.   | <u>126</u>    |
|               | Maintenance Mode            | Use when receiving maintenance from a marantz service engineer or custom installer.  | <u>127</u>    |

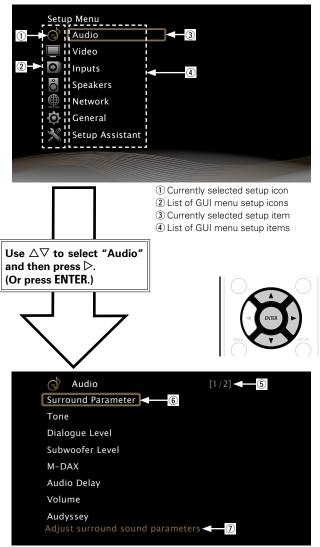
### Menu map

| Setting items      | Detailed items  | Description   | Page       |
|--------------------|---|---|------------|
|                    | Language  | Sets the language for display the menu on the TV screen.  | <u>129</u> |
| General            | ZONE2 Setup   | Makes settings for audio playback in a ZONE2 system.  | <u>129</u> |
|                    | Zone Rename   | Change the display title of each zone to one you prefer.  | <u>129</u> |
|                    | Trigger Out   | Selects when to activate trigger out.   | <u>129</u> |
|                    | Auto Standby  | When you do not perform any operation on this<br>unit with no audio or video input for a specified<br>time, this unit automatically enters the standby<br>mode. Before it enters the standby mode, "Auto<br>Standby" is displayed on the display of this unit<br>and the menu screen. | <u>130</u> |
|                    | Front Display   | Adjust the display brightness of this unit.   | <u>130</u> |
|                    | Information   | Show information about receiver settings, input signals, etc.   | <u>130</u> |
|                    | Firmware  | Set whether or not to check for firmware update,<br>update the firmware, and display update and<br>upgrade notifications.   | <u>131</u> |
|                    | Setup Lock  | Protect settings from inadvertent change.   | <u>133</u> |
| Setup<br>Assistant | Perform the installation,<br>unit for operation followi | connection, and setup procedures to prepare the ng guidance.  | 7          |

# Examples of menu screen displays

Typical examples are described below.

#### [Example 1] Menu selection screen (Top menu)

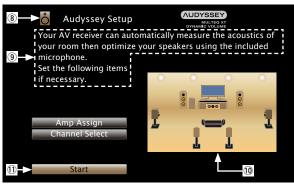


(5) Indication of there being following pages

6 Selected setup item

O Guide text for the currently selected setup item

#### [Example 2] Audyssey<sup>®</sup> Setup screen (with illustration)



⑧ Currently selected setup icon
⑨ Operation guidance text
⑩ Illustration
⑪ Selected setup item



When the menu is operated on a computer's resolution (e.g. VGA) or during playback of certain 3D video content, the playback image switches to the menu screen image.

# Examples of menu

Below we describe typical examples of displays on the TV screen.

|  | Menu display  | Description  |
|--|---|--|
| Top menu display   | Setup Menu<br>Mudio<br>Video<br>Inputs<br>Speakers<br>Metwork<br>Ceneral<br>Setup Assistant   | <ul> <li>Press SETUP to display the menu screen.</li> <li>Displays the selected line.</li> <li>Use Δ∇ to move to the item you want to set.</li> </ul>                          |
| Display when changing settings                                       | Inputs/Input Assign [1/2]<br>Set Defaults<br>CBL/SAT<br>DVD<br>HDMI2<br>GAME<br>HDMI3<br>None<br>MEDIA PLAYER<br>HDMI5<br>None<br>None<br>None<br>None<br>None<br>None<br>None<br>None<br>None<br>None  | <ul> <li>Displays the selected line.</li> <li>Use △∇ to move to the item you want to set.</li> <li>Press ENTER to set to the mode in which the setting can be made.</li> </ul> |
|  | Inputs/Input Assign       [1/2]         Set Defaults       HUMI       DOLTAL       COMP1         CBL/SAT       (1000)       HDM12       COAX1       COMP1         DVD       HDM12       COAX2       COMP2         Blu-ray       HDM13       None       None         GAME       HDM14       None       None         MEDIA PLAYER       HDM15       None       None | <ul> <li>Is displayed at the sides of items whose setting can be changed. Use &lt;</li> <li>Is to change to the desired setting.</li> </ul>                                    |
| Display when returning to the settings in effect at time of purchase | Inputs/Input Assign [1/2]<br>Set Defaults I INV COUNTA COMP<br>CBL/SAT HDMI1 COAX1 COMP1<br>DVD HDM12 COAX2 COMP2<br>Blu-ray HDM13 None None<br>GAME HDM14 None None<br>MEDIA PLAYER HDM15 None None<br>Press ENTER.  | <ul> <li>Press △ to select "Set Defaults", then press ENTER.</li> <li>Press ⊲ to select "Yes", then press ENTER.</li> </ul>  |
|  | Inputs/Input Assign       [1/2]         Set Defaults       HOMI       COURTAL         CBL/SAT       HDMI1       COAX1       COMP1         DVD       Reset to the default values?       COMP2         Blu-ray       Yes       No       None         MEDIA PLAYER       HDM15       None       None         TV AUDIO       None       OPT1       None               |  |

# Inputting characters

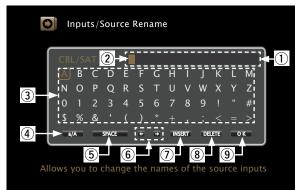
On this unit, you can change the name displayed on the following screens to the names that you prefer.

- Text Search (Ppage 65)
- Preset Name (page 47)
- Source Rename (Ppage 118)
- Friendly Name (page 125)
- Zone Rename (mppage 129)
- Character input for the network functions (CP page 50, 58, 60, 63, 127)

### **Keyboard screen**

Select a character on the TV screen to input characters.

### Display of a keyboard input screen



- (1) Character input section
- (2) Cursor
- ③ Keyboard section
- (4) Uppercase and lowercase switch key
- (5) Space key
- (6) Cursor kevs
- Insert key
- 8 Delete key
- (9) OK key

### lnput method

- Display the screen for inputting characters ( page 100 "Menu
- map").



- Select a character to be changed.
- $\square (1) Use \triangle \nabla \triangleleft \triangleright to select \blacksquare or \blacksquare.$ 
  - 2 Press ENTER to place the cursor at the character to be changed.

Each time ENTER is pressed, the cursor moves by one character.

#### Select a character to be input with $\triangle \nabla \triangleleft \triangleright$ then press ENTER.

• The types of characters that can be input are as shown below.

[Upper case characters/Numbers/Symbols] ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ 0123456789 ! " **#**\$ % & '() \* +,;<=> [Lower case characters/Numbers/Symbols] abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz 0123456789 .@-\_/:~?[\]^'{|}

• When you use  $\Delta \nabla$  while you type in, you can change uppercase characters to lowercase and vice versa.

Repeat steps 2 and 3 to change the name.

5 Use  $\Delta \nabla \triangleleft \triangleright$  to select **CK**, then press ENTER.



#### Make audio-related settings.

#### Menu operation

**Press MAIN to switch the zone mode to the MAIN ZONE.** MAIN lights ZONE SELECT MAIN lights. 2 Press SETUP. The menu is displayed on the TV screen. **3** Use  $\triangle \nabla$  to select the menu to be set or operated. **4** Press ENTER or  $\triangleright$  to enter the setting. • To return to the previous item, press <> or **BACK**. . • Exiting the Menu, press **SETUP** while the menu is displayed. The menu display disappears. W

### Items that can be set with the "Audio" procedure

Surround Parameter (page 106)

Tone (107)

Dialogue Level (2 page 107)

Subwoofer Level (2 page 107)

M-DAX (12 page 108)

Audio Delay (Proge 108)

Volume (Ppage 108)

Audyssey (mppage 109)

Graphic EQ (mpage 110)



# **Surround Parameter**

#### Default settings are underlined.

You can adjust the surround audio sound field effects to match your preferences.

The items (parameters) that can be adjusted depend on the signal being input and the currently set sound mode. For details on the adjustable parameters, see "Sound modes and surround parameters" (😰 page 141).

#### NOTE

|  | be set while playback is stopped. Make the settings during playback.  |   | Dolby Digital sources : "0dB"  |
|--|---|---|--|
| • When the sound mode is Setting items   | PURE DIRECT", you cannot set the surround parameters. Setting details   |   | • DTS movie sources : "0dB"     • DTS music sources : "-10dB"  |
| Home Theater EO<br>Softens the treble range<br>of movie soundtracks for<br>better understanding.<br>Loudness Management<br>This can be set in the<br>Dolby TrueHD mode.<br>This sets whether to<br>output as specified in<br>"Dynamic Compression"<br>or output directly without | <ul> <li>On : "Home Theater EQ" is used.</li> <li>Off : "Home Theater EQ" is not used.</li> <li>On : Outputs using the settings made in "Dynamic Compression".</li> <li>Off : "Dynamic Compression" settings and "Dialogue normalization" (Page 130) are disabled, and the signals on the disk are output as is.</li> </ul> | Center Image<br>Distributes the dialogue<br>output from the center<br>channel to the front left and<br>right channels and widens<br>the sound image in the<br>front. You can set this when<br>the sound mode is set to<br>DTS NEO:6 in the "Music"<br>mode. | On : Set.  |
| compressing the dynamic<br>range of audio recorded in<br>the disc.<br><b>Dynamic Compression</b><br>Compress dynamic range   | <u>Auto</u> : Automatic dynamic range compression on/off control according to source.   | Assign front L/R signal also<br>to surround channels for<br>wider sound. You can set<br>this when the sound mode<br>is Dolby PLII in the "Music"  | Off : Do not set.  |
| (difference between loud<br>and soft sounds).  | <ul> <li>Low / Medium / High : These set the compression level.</li> <li>Off : Dynamic range compression always off.</li> <li>You can set "Auto" only for the Dolby TrueHD source.</li> </ul>   | mode.<br>Dimension<br>Shift sound image center<br>to front or rear to adjust<br>playback balance. You can<br>set this when the sound<br>mode is Dolby PLII in the   | <ul> <li>0 - 6 (3)</li> <li>As you set a smaller number, the surround sound field shifts backward; as you set a larger number, the surround sound field shifts forward.</li> </ul> |

"Music" mode.

Setting items

Low Frequency Effects

Adjust the low-frequency

effects level (LFE).

Setting details

For proper playback of the different sources, we recommend setting

□ When "Input Mode" (☞ page 119) is set other than to "7.1CH IN"

U When "Input Mode" (page 119) is set to "7.1CH IN"

0dB / +5dB / +10dB / +15dB

to the values below.

-10dB - 0dB

| Setting items   | Setting details  |
|---|--|
| Center Width<br>Distributes the dialogue<br>output from the center<br>channel to left and right<br>channels and widens the<br>sound image in the front.<br>You can set this when the<br>sound mode is Dolby PLIIx<br>in the "Music" mode. | <ul> <li>O - 7 (3)</li> <li>✓ The smaller the value, the more dialogue is concentrated on the center channel. The larger the value, the more dialogue is distributed to front left and right channels, and the more the sound image widens in the front.</li> </ul>  |
| Height Gain<br>Control the front height<br>channel volume.  | <ul> <li>Low : Reduce the front height channel volume.</li> <li>Normal : Front height channel sound is output with standard sound volume.</li> <li>High : Increase the front height channel volume.</li> <li>NOTE</li> <li>"Height Gain" is displayed for the following settings.</li> <li>When "Assign Mode" (Page 121) is set to "Front Height".</li> <li>When the "Speaker Config." – "Front Height" setting (Page 122) is set other than to "None".</li> <li>When sound mode is "PLIIz" or the PLIIz decoder is used.</li> </ul> |
| Set Defaults<br>The "Surround Parameter"<br>settings are returned to the<br>default settings.   | <ul> <li>Yes : Reset to the defaults.</li> <li>No : Do not reset to the defaults.</li> <li>When you select "Set Defaults" and press ENTER, the "Reset to the default values?" prompt is displayed. Select either "Yes" or "No", and press ENTER.</li> </ul>  |

# Tone

#### Default settings are underlined.

Adjust the tonal quality of the sound.

| Setting items  | Setting details  |
|--|--|
| <b>Tone Control</b><br>Set the tone control function<br>to "On" and "Off". | <ul> <li>On : Allow tone adjustment (bass, treble).</li> <li>Off : Playback without tone adjustment.</li> <li>✓ "Tone Control" can be set when "Dynamic EQ" (☞ page 109) is set to "Off".</li> </ul> |
|  | <ul> <li>NOTE</li> <li>"Tone Control" settings are not reflected to ZONE2.</li> <li>The tone cannot be adjusted in the "DIRECT" or "PURE DIRECT" mode.</li> </ul>                                    |
| <b>Bass</b><br>Adjust bass.  | <ul> <li>-6dB - +6dB (0dB)</li> <li>"Bass" can be set when the menu "Tone Control" setting is "On".</li> </ul>   |
| <b>Treble</b><br>Adjust treble.  | <ul> <li>-6dB - +6dB (0dB)</li> <li>"Treble" can be set when the menu "Tone Control" setting is "On".</li> </ul>   |

# Dialogue Level

Default settings are underlined.

Sets the output level to clarify the dialogue output from the center channel.

Setting items Dialogue

–12dB – +12dB (<u>0dB</u>)

Setting details

# Subwoofer Level

Default settings are underlined.

Sets the subwoofer on/off and its output level.

| Setting items   | Setting details  |  |
|---|--|--|
| Subwoofer<br>Turn subwoofer output on<br>and off.     | On : The subwoofer is used.<br>Off : The subwoofer is not used.<br>NOTE<br>This can be set when the sound mode is "DIRECT" or "PURE DIRECT"<br>(*** page 71) and the "Subwoofer Mode" (*** page 122) is<br>"LFE+Main". |  |
| Subwoofer Level<br>Set the subwoofer output<br>level. | –12dB – +12dB ( <u>0dB</u> )   |  |

Compressed audio formats such as MP3, WMA (Windows Media Audio) and MPEG-4 AAC reduce the amount of data by eliminating signal components that are hard for the human ear to hear. The M-DAX function generates the signals eliminated upon compression, restoring the sound to conditions near those of the original sound before compression. It also corrects the sense of volume of the bass to obtain richer sound with compressed audio signals.

| Setting items                   | Setting details  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Mode<br>Set the mode for M-DAX. | <ul> <li>Off : Do not use M-DAX.</li> <li>Low : Optimized mode for compressed sources with normal highs.</li> <li>Mid : Apply suitable bass and treble boost for all compressed sources.</li> <li>High : Optimized mode for compressed sources with very weak highs.</li> <li>Image: This item can be set with analog signals or PCM signal (Sample rate = 44.1/48 kHz) is input.</li> <li>Image: "M-DAX" settings are stored for each input source.</li> <li>When set to "Off", the M-DAX indicator on the front panel switches off.</li> <li>This cannot be set when the surround mode is set to "DIRECT" or "PURE DIRECT".</li> <li>This can also be set by pressing M-DAX. Each time M-DAX is pressed, the setting is changed as shown below.</li> </ul> |

# **Audio Delay**

Default settings are underlined.

While viewing video, manually adjust the time to delay audio output.

#### Setting details

#### <u>0ms</u> – 200ms

# ø

- This item can be set within the range of 0 to 100 ms when "Auto Lip Sync" (137 page 112) is set to "On" and when a TV compatible with Auto Lip Sync is connected.
- Store "Audio Delay" for each input source.
- Audio Delay for game mode can be set when "Video Mode" (page 113) is set to "Auto" or "Game".

# Volume

#### Default settings are underlined.

Set the MAIN ZONE (room where the unit is located) volume setting.

| Setting items  | Setting details   |
|--|---|
| Scale<br>Set how volume is<br>displayed.   | <ul> <li><u>0 - 98</u>: Display in the range 0 (Min) to 98.</li> <li>-79.5dB - 18.0dB : DisplaydB (Min), in the range -79.5 dB to 18.0 dB.</li> <li>The "Scale" setting is applied also to the "Limit" and "Power On Level" display method.</li> <li>The "Scale" setting applies to all zones.</li> </ul> |
| <b>Limit</b><br>Make a setting for<br>maximum volume.  | Off : Do not set a maximum volume.<br>60 (–20dB) / 70 (–10dB) / 80 (0dB)  |
| <b>Power On Level</b><br>Define the volume setting<br>that is active when the<br>power is turned on. | Last : Use the memorized setting from the last session.<br>Mute : Always use the muting on condition when power is turned on.<br>1 – 98 (–79dB – 18dB) : The volume is adjusted to the set level.   |
| Mute Level<br>Set the amount of<br>attenuation when muting<br>is on.                                 | <ul> <li>Full : The sound is muted entirely.</li> <li>-40dB : The sound is attenuated by 40 dB down.</li> <li>-20dB : The sound is attenuated by 20 dB down.</li> </ul>   |

# Audyssey

#### Default se

Audio

Set Audyssey MultEQ<sup>®</sup> XT, Audyssey Dynamic EQ<sup>®</sup> and Audyssey Dynamic Vorselected after Audyssey<sup>®</sup> Setup has been performed. For additional information on please see page 147.

### NOTE

• If you have not performed Auto Setup, or if you change the speaker settings after you may not be able to select Dynamic EQ/Dynamic Volume.

In this case, either perform Audyssey® Setup over again or perform "Restor return to the settings after Audyssey<sup>®</sup> Setup was run.

• When HD Audio for which the sampling frequency exceeds 96 kHz is played cannot be set.

| Setting items  | Setting details   |
|--|---|
| MultEQ <sup>®</sup> XT<br>MultEQ <sup>®</sup> XT compensates<br>for both time and<br>frequency characteristics<br>of the listening area based<br>on Audyssey <sup>®</sup> Setup<br>measurement results.<br>Selection is done from three<br>types of compensation<br>curves. We recommend the<br>"Audyssey" setting.<br>MultEQ <sup>®</sup> XT is the<br>prerequisite function for<br>Dynamic EQ and Dynamic<br>Volume. | Audyssey : Optimize the frequency response of all speakers.<br>Audyssey Byp. L/R : Optimize frequency response of speakers except<br>front L and R speakers.<br>Audyssey Flat : Optimize frequency response of all speakers to flat<br>response.<br>Graphic EQ : Apply frequency response set with "Graphic EQ"<br>(Impage 110).<br>Off : Turn "MultEQ <sup>®</sup> XT" equalizer off.<br>• "Audyssey", "Audyssey Byp. L/R" and "Audyssey Flat" can be<br>selected after Audyssey <sup>®</sup> Setup has been performed. "Audyssey"<br>is automatically selected after performing Audyssey <sup>®</sup> Setup. When<br>"Audyssey", "Audyssey Byp. L/R" or "Audyssey Flat" is selected,<br>Audyssey", "Audyssey <sup>®</sup> Setup, if the Speaker Configuration, Distance,<br>Channel Level, and Crossover Frequency have changed without<br>increasing the number of speakers measured, only AUDYSSEY illuminates. |
|  |   |

#### NOTE

When using headphones, "MultEQ<sup>®</sup> XT" is automatically set to "Off".

# s

"MultEQ® XT", "Dynamic EQ" and "Dynamic Volume" settings are stored for each input source.

| settings are underlined.           | Setting items  | Setting details   |
|------------------------------------|--|---|
|                                    | Dynamic EQ   | On : Use Dynamic EQ.  |
| Volume <sup>®</sup> . These can be | Solve the problem of   | Off : Do not use Dynamic EQ.  |
| on Audyssey technology,            | deteriorating sound quality  | <i>A</i>  |
|                                    | as volume is decreased by taking into account                        | AUDYSSEY is displayed when set to "On".   |
| r performing Auto Setup,           | human perception and room acoustics. Works with                      | NOTE  |
| tore" (🕼 page 33) to               | MultEQ <sup>®</sup> XT.  | When the menu "Dynamic EQ" setting is "On", it is not possible to do<br>"Tone Control" (1977) page 107) adjustment. |
| d back, the "Audyssey"             | <b>Reference Level Offset</b><br>Audyssey Dynamic EQ <sup>®</sup> is | <b><u>OdB</u></b> (Film Ref) : This is the default setting and should be used when listening to movies.             |
|                                    | referenced to the standard film mix level. It makes                  | <b>5dB</b> : Select this setting for content that has a very wide dynamic range, such as classical music.           |
|                                    | adjustments to maintain  | <b>10dB</b> : Select this setting for jazz or other music that has a wider dynamic                                  |
| all speakers.                      | the reference response   | range. This setting should also be selected for TV content as that is usually                                       |
| nse of speakers except             | and surround envelopment   | mixed at 10 dB below film reference.  |
|                                    | when the volume is turned  | <b>15dB</b> : Select this setting for pop/rock music or other program material                                      |
| of all speakers to flat            | down from 0 dB. However,   | that is mixed at very high listening levels and has a compressed dynamic  |
| et with "Graphic EQ"               | film reference level is not  | range.  |
|                                    | always used in music or other non-film content.                      | Setting is enabled when "Dynamic EQ" is "On" (1) page 109).   |
|                                    | Dynamic EQ Reference   |   |
|                                    | Level Offset provides three  |   |
| udyssey Flat" can be               | offsets from the film level  |   |
| performed. "Audyssey"              | reference (5 dB, 10 dB, and  |   |
| dyssey <sup>®</sup> Setup. When    | 15 dB) that can be selected  |   |
| ssey Flat" is selected,            | when the mix level of the  |   |
|                                    | content is not within the  |   |
| Configuration, Distance,           | standard. Recommended  |   |
| nave changed without               | setting levels are shown at  |   |
| ly AUDYSSEY illuminates.           | right.   |   |

#### Setting items Setting details **Heavy** : Most adjustment to softest and loudest sounds. **Dynamic Volume** Solve the problem of large Medium : Medium adjustment to loudest and softest sound. variations in volume level **Light** : Least adjustment to loudest and softest sounds. between TV, movies and **Off** : Do not use "Dynamic Volume". other content (between quiet passages and • AUDYSSEY is displayed when set to "Heavy", "Medium" or "Light". loud passages, etc.) by • If "Dynamic Volume" is set to "Yes" in "Audyssey® Setup" automatically adjusting to (*page 31*), the setting is automatically changed to "Medium". the user's preferred volume

setting.

# **Graphic EQ**

#### Default settings are underlined.

Use the graphic equalizer to adjust the tone of each speaker. "Graphic EQ" can be set when "MultEQ<sup>®</sup> XT" setting (1977) page 109) is "Graphic EQ".

| Setting items   | Setting details  |
|---|--|
| <b>Speaker Selection</b><br>Select whether to adjust<br>tones for individual speakers<br>or for all speakers.   | <ul> <li>All : Adjust the tone of all speakers together.</li> <li>Left/Right : Adjust the tone of left and right speakers together.</li> <li>Each : Adjust the tone of each speaker.</li> </ul>  |
| Adjust EQ<br>Adjust tones for each<br>frequency band. Adjust<br>the speaker selected in<br>"Speaker Selection". | <ol> <li>Select the speaker.</li> <li>Select the adjustment frequency band.</li> <li>63Hz / 125Hz / 250Hz / 500Hz / 1kHz / 2kHz / 4kHz / 8kHz / 16kHz         <ul> <li>Select the speakers you want to adjust when "Left/Right" or "Each" is selected.</li> </ul> </li> <li>Adjust the level.         <ul> <li>-20.0dB - +6.0dB (0.0dB)</li> </ul> </li> </ol> |
| Curve Copy<br>Copy "Audyssey Flat"<br>(Ppage 109) curve from<br>MultEQ <sup>®</sup> XT.                         | <ul> <li>Yes : Copy.</li> <li>No : Do not copy.</li> <li>"Curve Copy" is displayed after Audyssey<sup>®</sup> Setup has been performed.</li> <li>When you select "Curve Copy" and press ENTER, the "Copy "Audyssey Flat"?" prompt is displayed. Select either "Yes" or "No", and press ENTER.</li> </ul>   |
| Set Defaults<br>The "Graphic EQ" settings<br>are returned to the default<br>settings.                           | <ul> <li>Yes : Reset to the defaults.</li> <li>No : Do not reset to the defaults.</li> <li>When you select "Set Defaults" and press<br/>ENTER, the "Reset to the default values?"<br/>prompt is displayed. Select either "Yes" or<br/>"No", and press ENTER.</li> </ul>  |



## Make video-related settings.

# Menu operation

| <b>Press MAIN to switch the zone mode to the MAIN ZO MAIN</b> lights.   | ONE. |
|---|------|
| <b>Press SETUP.</b><br>The menu is displayed on the TV screen.  |      |
| <b>3</b> Use $\Delta \nabla$ to select the menu to be set or operated.  |      |
| Press ENTER or $\triangleright$ to enter the setting.   |      |
| To return to the previous item, press ⊲ or <b>BACK</b> .<br>Exiting the Menu, press <b>SETUP</b> while the menu is displayed.<br>The menu display disappears. |      |
|   |      |

| ZONE SELE  | ICT   |         |
|------------|-------|---------|
|            |       | Blu-ray |
|            |       |         |
| (TV AUDIO) |       |         |
|            |       |         |
|            |       |         |
| CH / PAGE  | MUTE  | VOLUME  |
| INFO       |       | OPTIO   |
| -          | ENTER | •       |
| BACK       | Ţ     | SETUR   |

# Items that can be set with the "Video" procedure

| HDMI Setup (🖙 page 112)      | <br> |
|------------------------------|------|
| Output Settings (🎓 page 113) |      |
| Volume Display (🎓 page 114)  |      |
| Info Display (🖙 page 114)    |      |
| Audio Display (🖅 page 115)   |      |
| TV Format (1277 page 115)    |      |

GUI

Default settings are underlined.

# **Picture Adjust**

# Default settings are underlined.

Picture quality can be adjusted.

We recommend leaving the settings unchanged from the default settings. First adjust the display image quality on your TV, and use this menu only when you want to make fine adjustments.

• This item can be set when the input source is CBL/SAT DVD Blu-ray GAME AUX

## MEDIA PLAYER CD NETWORK TV AUDIO

• With input sources other than the ones above, this item can be set when "Video Select" is selected. In this case, the original input source settings are called out.

• Can be set when the "Video Conversion" setting (page 113) is "On".

• "Blu-ray", "GAME", "AUX", "TV AUDIO" or "CD" can be set when "HDMI" or "COMP" (
page 117, 118) has been assigned.

| Setting items  | Setting details                  | - |
|--|----------------------------------|---|
| <b>Contrast</b><br>Adjust picture contrast.                | -6 - +6 ( <u>0</u> )             | - |
| Brightness<br>Adjust picture brightness.                   | <u>0</u> - +12                   | - |
| Saturation<br>Adjust picture chroma level<br>(saturation). | -6 - +6 ( <u>0</u> )             | - |
| Hue<br>Adjust green and red<br>balance.                    | -6 - +6 ( <u>0</u> )             | - |
| Noise Reduction<br>Reduce overall picture<br>noise.        | <u>Off</u> / Low / Medium / High | - |
| Enhancer<br>Emphasize picture contours.                    | <u>0</u> - +12                   | _ |

# ø

• "Picture Adjust" can not be set when video and component video signals are output.

• "Picture Adjust" can not be set when 4K signals are input.

# HDMI Setup

Make settings for HDMI video/audio output.

| Setting items   | Setting details  |
|---|--|
| Auto Lip Sync<br>Make automatic<br>compensation for timing<br>shift in audio and video<br>output.                 | <u>On</u> : Compensated.<br>Off : Not compensated.   |
| HDMI Audio Out<br>Select HDMI audio output<br>device.   | <ul> <li>AVR : Play back through speakers connected to the unit.</li> <li>TV : Play back through TV connected to the unit.</li> <li>The audio signal input from the HDMI input connector can be output as an output signal from the HDMI output connector by setting the HDMI audio output destination to TV.</li> <li>Audio signals input via the Analog/Coaxial/Optical input connectors cannot be output from the HDMI output connector.</li> <li>When the HDMI control function is activated, priority is given to the TV audio setting (mpage 91 "HDMI control function").</li> </ul> |
| HDMI Control<br>You can link operations with<br>devices connected to HDMI<br>and compatible with HDMI<br>Control. | <ul> <li>On : Use HDMI control function.</li> <li>Off : Do not use HDMI control function.</li> <li>When a device that is not compatible with the HDMI control function is connected, set "HDMI Control" to "Off".</li> <li>Please consult the operating instructions for each connected device to check the settings.</li> <li>Refer to "HDMI control function" (marging 91) for more information about the HDMI control function.</li> </ul>  |
|   | <ul> <li>• When "HDMI Control" is set to "On", it consumes more standby power. If you are not using this unit for an extended period, it is recommended that you unplug the power cord from the power outlet.</li> <li>• The HDMI control function controls operations of a TV that is compatible with the HDMI control function. Make sure that the TV and HDMI are connected when you perform HDMI control.</li> <li>• If the "HDMI Control" settings have been changed, always reset the power to connected devices after the change.</li> </ul>  |

| Setting items  | Setting details   | Setting items   | Setting details   |
|--|---|---|---|
| Standby Source<br>Sets the HDMI input source<br>to put into standby when<br>the power is on. | Last : Enters standby with the previously used input source.<br><b>CBL/SAT / DVD / Blu-ray / GAME / AUX / MEDIA PLAYER / CD</b> : Enters<br>standby with each of the input sources assigned to each input terminal.<br>Standby Source" can be set when "HDMI Control" is set to "On".   | Video Conversion<br>The input video signal is<br>converted automatically<br>in conjunction with<br>the connected TV | On : The input video signal is converted.         Off : The input video signal is not converted.         Image: State of the input video signal is not converted.         Image: State of the input video signal is not converted.         Image: State of the input video signal is not converted.         Image: State of the input video signal is not converted.         Image: State of the input video signal is not converted.         Image: State of the input video signal is not converted.         Image: State of the input video signal is not converted.         Image: State of the input video signal is not converted.         Image: State of the input video signal is not converted.         Image: State of the input video signal is not converted.         Image: State of the input video signal is not converted.         Image: State of the input video signal is not converted.         Image: State of the input video signal is not converted.         Image: State of the input video signal is not converted.         Image: State of the input video signal is not converted.         Image: State of the input video signal is not converted.         Image: State of the input video signal is not converted.         Image: State of the input video signal is not converted.         Image: State of the input video signal is not converted.         Image: State of the input video signal is not converted.         Image: State of the input video signal |
| Power Off Control<br>Links the power standby of<br>this unit to external devices.            | All: If power to a connected TV is turned off independently of the input<br>source, power to this unit is automatically set to standby.Video : If power to a connected TV is turned off when the input source is<br>CBL/SAT / DVD / Blu-ray / GAME / AUX / MEDIA PLAYER / CD, power to<br>this unit is automatically set to standby.Off : This unit does not link with power to a TV. | (CF) page 6 "Converting<br>input video signals for<br>output (Video conversion<br>function)").<br>CBL/SAT DVD       | <ul> <li>source is input, the video conversion function might not operate. In this case set "Video Conversion" to "Off".</li> <li>When "Video Conversion" is set to "Off", the video conversion function does not work. In this case, connect this unit and TV with the same type of cable.</li> </ul>  |
|  | * "Power Off Control" can be set when "HDMI Control" is set to "On".  | Blu-ray * GAME *  |   |

# **Output Settings**

Default settings are underlined.

Makes screen-related settings.

\* "Blu-ray", "GAME", "AUX", "TV AUDIO" or "CD" can be set when "HDMI" or "COMP" (@page 117, 118) has been assigned.

# 

"Output Settings" can not be set when 4K signals are input.

| Setting items                   | Setting details  |  |
|---------------------------------|--|--|
| Video Mode                      | Auto : Process video automatically based on the HDMI content   |  |
| Make settings for video         | information.   |  |
| processing.                     | Game : Always process video for game content.  |  |
| CBL/SAT DVD<br>Blu-ray * GAME * | <b>Movie</b> : Always process video for movie content.   |  |
| AUX * MEDIA PLAYER              | • If "Video Mode" is set to "Auto", the mode is switched according to the input contents.  |  |
| CD * TV AUDIO *                 | <ul> <li>If a source is played in both MAIN ZONE (audio and video) and ZONE2<br/>(audio only) modes in the same room, audio in MAIN ZONE and ZONE2<br/>modes may sound out of synchronization, but this is not malfunction. In<br/>this case, setting to "Game" mode may improve audio synchronization.</li> </ul> |  |

| i/p Scaler                   | Analog : Use i/p scaler function for analog video signal.                 |
|------------------------------|---|
| Convert the input source     | Analog & HDMI : Use i/p scaler function for analog and HDMI video signal. |
| resolution to the resolution | HDMI : Use i/p scaler function for HDMI video signal.                     |
| set.                         | <b>Off</b> : Do not use i/p scaler function.                              |
| CBL/SAT DVD                  | ¢   |

| CBL/SAT DVD        | <u> </u>                   |
|--------------------|----------------------------|
| Blu-ray * GAME *   | • "Anale                   |
|                    | conne                      |
| AUX * MEDIA PLAYER | Which                      |
| CD * NETWORK       | input (                    |
| TV AUDIO *         | <ul> <li>This f</li> </ul> |
|                    | sYCC                       |

- log & HDMI" can be set for input sources for which an HDMI input ector is assigned.
- ch items can be set depend on the input source assigned to each connector.
- function is not effective when the input signal is "x.v.Color", 3D, sYCC 601 color, Adobe RGB color, Adobe YCC 601 color or computer resolution.

| Setting items  | Setting details  |
|--|--|
| Setting items Resolution Set the output resolution. You can set "Resolution" separately for HDMI output of the analog video input and HDMI input.  CBL/SAT DVD Blu-ray * GAME * AUX * MEDIA PLAYER CD * NETWORK TV AUDIO * | Setting details          Auto       : The number of pixels the TV connected to the HDMI MONITOR         OUT connector supports is detected automatically and the appropriate output resolution is set.       480p/576p / 1080i / 720p / 1080p / 1080p:24Hz / 4K : Set the output resolution.         Image: Set the set when "i/p Scaler" is set to anything other than "Off".       • This item can be set when "i/p Scaler" is set to anything other than "Off".         • When "i/p Scaler" is set to "Analog & HDMI", the resolution of both the analog video input signal and HDMI input signal can be set.       • To watch 1080p/24Hz pictures, use a TV that supports 1080p/24Hz video signals.         • When set to "1080p:24Hz", you can enjoy film-like pictures for film sources (in 24 Hz). For video sources and mixed sources, we recommend setting the resolution to "1080p". |
| Progressive Mode<br>Set an appropriate<br>progressive conversion<br>mode for the source video<br>signal.   | <ul> <li>It is not possible to convert a 50 Hz signal into 1080p/24Hz. It is output at a resolution of 1080p/50Hz.</li> <li><u>Auto</u>: The video signal is automatically detected and the appropriate mode is set.</li> <li>Video : Select mode suitable for video playback.</li> <li>Video and Film : Select mode suitable for video and 30-frame film material playback.</li> </ul>  |
| CBL/SAT DVD<br>Blu-ray * GAME *<br>AUX * MEDIA PLAYER<br>CD * TV AUDIO *   | This item can be set when "i/p Scaler" is set to anything other than<br>"Off".   |

| Setting items                     | Setting details   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| Aspect Ratio                      | 16:9 : Output at 16:9 aspect ratio.   |
| Set the aspect ratio for the      | 4:3 : Output at 4:3 aspect ratio.   |
| video signals output to the HDMI. | "Aspect Ratio" can be set when "i/p Scaler" is set to anything other<br>than "Off". |
| CBL/SAT DVD                       |   |
| Blu-ray * GAME *                  |   |
| AUX * MEDIA PLAYER                |   |
| CD * NETWORK                      |   |
| TV AUDIO *                        |   |

# Volume Display

#### Default settings are underlined.

Sets where to display the master volume level.

| Setting items | Setting details   |
|---------------|---|
| Volume        | Bottom : Display at the bottom.   |
|               | <b>Top</b> : Display at the top.  |
|               | <b>Off</b> : Turn display off.  |
|               | When the master volume display is hard to see when superimposed on movie subtitles, set to "Top". |

# Info Display

#### Default settings are underlined.

Displays status of operation temporarily when the sound mode is changed, or input source is switched. You can set whether or not to show each of these status displays.

| Setting items  | Setting details              |
|----------------|------------------------------|
| On-screen Info | <u>On</u> : Turn display on. |
|                | Off : Turn display off.      |

#### Video

# **Audio Display**

### Default settings are underlined.

Sets how long each menu is displayed when the input source is "NETWORK", "iPod/USB", or "FM".

| Setting items | Setting details   |
|---------------|---|
| Audio         | Always : Show display continuously.                       |
|               | <b>30s</b> : Show display for 30 seconds after operation. |
|               | <b>10s</b> : Show display for 10 seconds after operation. |
|               | Off : Turn display off.                                   |

# **TV Format**

#### Default settings are underlined.

Set the video signal format to be output for the TV you are using.

| Setting items | Setting details   |
|---------------|---|
| Format        | NTSC : Select NTSC output.<br>PAL : Select PAL output.  |
|               | <ul> <li>* Format" can also be set by the following procedure. However, the menu screen is not displayed.</li> <li>1. Press and hold the main unit's STATUS and ZONE2 SOURCE for at least 3 seconds.</li> <li>* Video Format &lt; NTSC &gt;" appears on the display.</li> <li>2. Use the main unit's PRESET CH +, – and set the video signal format.</li> <li>3. Press the main unit's STATUS to complete the setting.</li> </ul> |
|               | NOTE  |
|               | When a format other than the video format of the connected TV is set, the picture will not be displayed properly.   |



# Inputs

Perform settings related to input source playback.

• You do not have to change the settings to use the unit. Make settings when needed.

# Menu operation

| <b>Press MAIN to switch the zone mode to the MAIN ZONE.</b><br><b>MAIN</b> lights.   | ZONE SELECT (P<br>(MAIN) (ZONE 2) (SLEEP) ( |
|--|---|
| <b>2</b> Press SETUP.<br>The menu is displayed on the TV screen.   | CBL/SAT DVD Blo                             |
| <b>3</b> Use $\Delta \nabla$ to select the menu to be set or operated.   | GAME AUX (PLA                               |
| <b>4</b> Press ENTER or $\triangleright$ to enter the setting.   | NETWORK (NTERNET)                           |
| <ul> <li>To return to the previous item, press &lt; or BACK.</li> <li>Exiting the Menu, press SETUP while the menu is displayed.<br/>The menu display disappears.</li> </ul> | CH/FRGE MITE VOX                            |
|  |   |
|  | BACK  |
|  |   |

# Important information

❑ About the display of input sources In this section, the configurable input sources for each item are shown as follows.

| CBL/SAT  | DVD   | Blu-ray | GAME | AUX | MEDIA PLAYER | iPod/USB | CD | FM | NETWORK |
|----------|-------|---------|------|-----|--------------|----------|----|----|---------|
| TV AUDIO | M-XPo | ort     |      |     |              |          |    |    |         |

# NOTE

Input sources that have been set to "Hide" at "Hide Sources" (18) cannot be selected.

# Items that can be set with the "Inputs" procedure

Input Assign (Ppage 117)

Source Rename (18)

Hide Sources (118)

Source Level (19 page 119)

Input Select (19 page 119)

Video Source (mppage 119)

VOLUME

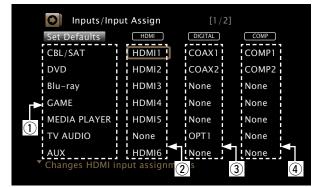
# Input Assign

This unit has certain input sources such as "CBL/SAT" assigned to audio and video connectors by default. By making the default connections, you can simply press an input source select button to play back audio or video from the connected device with ease.

When making connections other than the default settings, you must change settings in this section.

# Examples of "Input Assign" menu screen displays

This screen appears when the "Inputs" - "each input source" - "Input Assign" menu is selected. Use the "Input Assign" menu to change the (2) HDMI input connectors, (3) Digital input connectors, and (4) component input connectors that are assigned to the ① input sources in default settings.



# Input assignments menu operations

Use  $\Delta \nabla \triangleleft \triangleright$  to move the cursor to the item you want to set, and then press **ENTER**.

Use  $\triangleleft \triangleright$  to select the input connector to be assigned.

Press ENTER to register the setting.

| Setting item | S |
|--------------|---|
|--------------|---|

HDMI

Setting details

HDMI 1 / HDMI 2 / HDMI 3 / HDMI 4 / HDMI 5 / HDMI 6 : Assign an HDMI Set this to change the HDMI input connector to the selected input source.

input connectors assigned None : Do not assign an HDMI input connector to the selected input to the input sources. source.



• At time of purchase, the settings of the different input sources are as shown below.

| Input source       | CBL/SAT | DVD             | Blu-ray | GAME     |
|--------------------|---------|-----------------|---------|----------|
| Default<br>setting | HDMI 1  | HDMI 2          | HDMI 3  | HDMI 4   |
| Input source       | AUX     | MEDIA<br>PLAYER | CD      | TV AUDIO |
| Default<br>setting | HDMI 6  | HDMI 5          | None    | None     |

#### ø

- An input source to which an HDMI input connector cannot be assigned is displayed as "---".
- To play the video signal assigned at "HDMI" combined with the audio signal assigned at "Input Assign" - "DIGITAL", select "Digital" at "Input Mode" (mppage 119).
- The audio signals input from the analog and digital connectors are not output to the monitor.
- When "HDMI Control" (mpage 112) is set to "On", HDMI input connector cannot be assigned to "TV AUDIO".

#### Setting items

#### Setting details

**DIGITAL COAX 1, 2** / Set this to change the digital input source.

**COAX 1, 2 / OPT 1, 2**: Assign a digital input connector to the selected input source.

input connectors assigned to the input sources.

**None** : Do not assign a digital input connector to the selected input source.

 CBL/SAT
 DVD

 Blu-ray
 GAME

 AUX
 MEDIA PLAYER

 CD
 TV AUDIO

• At time of purchase, the settings of the different input sources are as shown below.

| Input source       | CBL/SAT | DVD             | Blu-ray | GAME     |
|--------------------|---------|-----------------|---------|----------|
| Default<br>setting | COAX 1  | COAX 2          | None    | None     |
| Input source       | AUX     | MEDIA<br>PLAYER | CD      | TV AUDIO |
| Default            | None    | None            | 0PT 2   | OPT 1    |

#### COMP

CBL/SAT

Blu-rav

CD

Set Defaults

setting.

The input source name is returned to the default

(Component video) Set this to change the component video input connectors assigned to the input sources.

AUX MEDIA PLAYER

DVD

GAME

TV AUDIO

**COMP 1, 2**: Assign the component video input connector to the selected input source.

**None** : Do not assign a component video input connector to the selected input source.

• At time of purchase, the settings of the different input sources are as shown below.

| Input source       | CBL/SAT | DVD             | Blu-ray | GAME     |
|--------------------|---------|-----------------|---------|----------|
| Default<br>setting | COMP 1  | COMP 2          | None    | None     |
| Input source       | AUX     | MEDIA<br>PLAYER | CD      | TV AUDIO |
| Default<br>setting | None    | None            | None    | None     |

✓ An input source to which an component video input connector cannot be assigned is displayed as "---".

**Yes** : Reset to the defaults. **No** : Do not reset to the defaults.

> If you select "Set Defaults" and press ENTER, the message "Reset to the default values?" is displayed. Select "Yes" or "No", and then press ENTER.



# **Source Rename**

Change the display name of the selected input source.

This is convenient when the input source name of your device and the input source name of this unit are different. You can change the name to suit your needs. When the renaming is completed, the name is displayed on this unit's display and on the menu screen.

#### Setting details

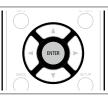
CBL/SAT / DVD / Blu-ray / GAME / AUX / MEDIA PLAYER / CD / TV AUDIO / M-XPort : Change the display name of the selected input source.

• Up to 12 characters can be input.

• For character input, see page 104.

Set Defaults : The input source name is returned to the default setting.

- Yes : Reset to the defaults.
- No : Do not reset to the defaults.
- If you select "Set Defaults" and press ENTER, the message "Reset to the default values?" is displayed. Select "Yes" or "No", and then press ENTER.



# **Hide Sources**

#### Default settings are underlined.

Remove from the display input sources that are not used.

#### Setting details

CBL/SAT / DVD / Blu-ray / GAME / AUX / MEDIA PLAYER / iPod/USB / CD / FM / NETWORK / TV AUDIO / M-XPort : Select input source that is not used.

- **<u>Show</u>** : Use this source.
- Hide : Do not use this source.

#### NOTE

- Input sources being used in the MAIN ZONE or ZONE2 cannot be selected.
- Input sources being used in the various zones cannot be deleted.
- Input sources set to "Hide" cannot be selected using the input source select button.

# **Source Level**

#### Default settings are underlined.

- This function corrects the playback level of the selected input source's audio input.
- Make this setting if there are differences in the input volume levels between the different sources.

#### Setting details

#### -12dB - +12dB (<u>0dB</u>)

The analog input level and digital input level can be adjusted independently for input sources for which "DIGITAL" is assigned at "Input Assign" (<u>page 117</u>).

# **Input Select**

#### Default settings are underlined.

Set the audio input mode and decode mode of each input source. The input modes available for selection may vary depending on the input source.

| Setting items               | Setting details  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Input Mode                  | Auto : Automatically detect input signal and perform playback.   |
| Set the audio input modes   | HDMI : Play only signals from HDMI input.  |
| for the different input     | Digital : Play only signals from digital input.  |
| sources.                    | Analog : Play only signals from analog input.  |
| It is normally recommended  | 7.1CH IN : Only signals input from the 7.1CH IN connector will be played   |
| to set the audio input mode | back.  |
| to "Auto".                  | 1 contraction of the second  |
|                             | • "Digital" can be set for input sources for which "DIGITAL" is assigned at "Input Assign" (17 page 118).  |
|                             | • If the input source is set to "CBL/SAT", "DVD", "MEDIA PLAYER" or  |
|                             | "CD", it can be set to "Analog".   |
|                             | • If "HDMI Control" is set to "On" and a TV compatible with the ARC is connected via the HDMI MONITOR connectors, the input mode whose input source is "TV" is fixed to ARC. |

#### • The surround mode cannot be set if the input mode is set to "7.1CH IN".

| Setting items             | Setting details   |
|---------------------------|---|
| Decode Mode               | Auto : Detect type of digital input signal and decode and play automatically. |
| Set the audio decode mode | <b>PCM</b> : Decode and play only PCM input signals.                          |
| for input source.         | <b>DTS</b> : Decode and play only DTS input signals.                          |
| CBL/SAT DVD               | ¢.  |
| Blu-ray GAME              | • This item can be set for input sources for which "DIGITAL" is assigned      |
| AUX MEDIA PLAYER          | at "Input Assign" (1) page 117).  |
|                           | • Normally set this mode to "Auto". Set "PCM" and "DTS" when                  |
| CD TV AUDIO               | inputting the corresponding input signal.                                     |

# Video Source

#### Default settings are underlined.

Video of another input source is played back combined with the playing audio.

#### Setting details

**Default** : Play the picture and sound of the input source.

**CBL/SAT / DVD / Blu-ray / GAME / AUX / MEDIA PLAYER / TV AUDIO / CD** : Select video input source to view. The video of the selected input source is played along with the audio currently being played. This can be set for individual input sources.

"Blu-ray", "GAME", "AUX", "TV AUDIO" or "CD" can be selected only when "COMP" is assigned to the input source.

#### NOTE

- It is not possible to select HDMI input signals.
- Input sources for which "Hide" is selected at "Hide Sources" (Page 118) cannot be selected.



# Speakers

- Set when changing Audyssey<sup>®</sup> Setup settings.
   If you change the speaker settings after performing Audyssey<sup>®</sup> Setup, it will not be possible to set Audyssey MultEQ<sup>®</sup> XT, Audyssey Dynamic EQ<sup>®</sup> and Audyssey Dynamic Volume<sup>®</sup> (<u>page 109</u>).
- Can be used without changing the settings. Please set if necessary.

# Menu operation

| <b>Press MAIN to switch the zone mode to the MAIN ZONE.</b><br><b>MAIN</b> lights.   |                               |
|--|-------------------------------|
| <b>2</b> Press SETUP.<br>The menu is displayed on the TV screen.   | CBL/SAT CVD                   |
| <b>3</b> Use $\Delta \nabla$ to select the menu to be set or operated.   | (GAME) (AUX<br>(TV AUDIO) (CD |
| <b>4</b> Press ENTER or $\triangleright$ to enter the setting.   | Pod /USB PHONO                |
| <ul> <li>To return to the previous item, press &lt; or BACK.</li> <li>Exiting the Menu, press SETUP while the menu is displayed.<br/>The menu display disappears.</li> </ul> |                               |
|  | BACK                          |

Items that can be set with the "Speakers" procedure

Audyssey<sup>®</sup> Setup ( $prescript{rec} page 27, 87$ )

Manual Setup (Ppage 121)

VOLUME VOLUME

# **Manual Setup**

#### Default settings are underlined.

Perform when setting the speakers manually or when changing settings made in Audyssey $^{\textcircled{R}}$  Setup.

 If you change the speaker settings after performing Audyssey<sup>®</sup> Setup, it will not be possible to select Audyssey MultEQ<sup>®</sup> XT, Audyssey Dynamic EQ<sup>®</sup> and Audyssey Dynamic Volume<sup>®</sup> ((\*\*\*\*) page 109).

• "Manual Setup" can be used without changing the settings. Please set if necessary.

| Setting items  | Setting details  |
|--|--|
| Amp Assign<br>Select power amplifier<br>usage method to match<br>your speaker system.  | <ul> <li>Assign Mode : Set the assignment mode.</li> <li>Surround Back : Setting for 7.1-channel playback using surround back speakers.</li> <li>ZONE2 : Setting to assign the unit's built-in power amplifier for ZONE2 and output the audio in stereo.</li> <li>SPKR-C : Setting to use the front speakers via the bi-amp connection.</li> <li>Front B : Setting to use the second set of front speakers for playback. You can switch the front speakers A and B to be used for playback in accordance with the 2-channel playback or multi-channel playback mode. When you select this Front B setting, also perform the "Front Speaker Setup" (The page 123) procedure.</li> <li>Front Height : Setting for 7.1-channel playback using front height speakers.</li> </ul> |
| <b>Speaker Config.</b><br>Indicate speaker presence<br>and select speaker size<br>categories based on bass<br>reproduction capability.   | <ul> <li>Front : Set the front speaker size.</li> <li>Large : Use a large speaker that can adequately play back low frequencies.</li> <li><u>Small</u> : Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for low frequencies.</li> </ul>   |
| NOTE<br>Do not use the outward<br>shape of the speaker to<br>determine selection of a<br>"Large" or "Small" speaker.<br>Instead, use the frequencies<br>set in "Crossovers"<br>(Cp page 123) as the<br>standard for determining<br>bass reproduction capability. | <ul> <li>When "Subwoofer" is set to "No", "Front" is automatically set to "Large".</li> <li>When "Front" is set to "Small", "Center", "Surround", "Surr. Back" and "Front Height" can not be set to "Large".</li> <li>Center : Set the presence and size of the center speaker.</li> <li>Large : Use a large speaker that can adequately play back low frequencies.</li> <li>Small : Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for low frequencies.</li> <li>None : Select when a center speaker is not connected.</li> </ul>  |

✓ "Large" is not displayed when "Front" is set to "Small".

| Setting details   |
|---|
| Subwoofer : Set the presence of a subwoofer.  |
| • <u>Yes</u> : Use a subwoofer.   |
| • No : Select when a subwoofer is not connected.  |
| When "Front" is set to "Small", "Subwoofer" is automatically set t "Yes".   |
| <b>Surround</b> : Set the presence and size of the surround speakers.   |
| • Large : Use a large speaker that can adequately play back low frequencies.  |
| • <b>Small</b> : Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for low frequencies.   |
| • None : Select when the surround speakers are not connected.   |
| je se   |
| • When "Surround" is set to "Large", "Surr. Back" and "Front Height   |
| can be set to "Large".  |
| <ul> <li>When "Surround" is set to "None", "Surr. Back" and "Front Height" ar<br/>automatically set to "None".</li> </ul>   |
| <ul> <li>Surr. Back : Set the presence, size and number of surround back speaker</li> <li>Large : Use a large speaker that can adequately play back log frequencies.</li> </ul> |
| <ul> <li><u>Small</u>: Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for<br/>low frequencies.</li> </ul>  |
| • None : Select when the surround back speakers are not connected.  |
| • <b><u>2spkrs</u> :</b> Use two surround back speakers.  |
| • <b>1spkr</b> : Use only one surround back speaker. When you select th setting, connect the surround back speaker to the left (L) channel.                                     |
| NOTE  |
| When "Assign Mode" setting ( <u>page 121</u> ) is "Surround Back", yo can make the "Surr. Back" setting.  |
|   |

| Setting items  | Setting details   | Setting items  | Setting details  |
|--|---|--|--|
| Speaker Config.<br>(Continued)                                 | <ul> <li>Front Height : Set the presence and size of the front height speakers.</li> <li>Large : Use a large speaker that can adequately play back low frequencies.</li> <li>Small : Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for low frequencies.</li> <li>None : Select when the front height speakers are not connected.</li> <li>NOTE</li> <li>When "Assign Mode" setting (127 page 121) is "Front Height", you can make the "Front Height" setting.</li> </ul>  | <b>Distances</b><br>Set distance from listening<br>position to speakers.<br>Measure beforehand the<br>distance from the listening<br>position to each speaker. | Unit : Set the unit of distance.<br>• <u>Feet</u> / Meters<br>Step : Set the minimum variable width of the distance.<br>• <u>1ft</u> / 0.1ft<br>• 0.1m / 0.01m<br>Set Defaults : The "Distances" settings are returned to the default<br>settings.<br>• Yes : Reset to the defaults.<br>• No : Do not reset to the defaults.   |
| <b>Bass</b><br>Set subwoofer and LFE<br>signal range playback. | <ul> <li>Subwoofer Mode : Select low range signals to be reproduced by subwoofer.</li> <li>LFE : The low range signal of the channel set to "Small" speaker size is added to the LFE signal output from the subwoofer.</li> <li>LFE+Main : The low range signal of all channels is added to the LFE signal output from the subwoofer.</li> <li>IFE+Main : The low range signal of all channels is added to the LFE signal output from the subwoofer.</li> <li>IFE+Main : The low range signal of all channels is added to the LFE signal output from the subwoofer.</li> <li>IFE+Main : The low range signal of all channels is added to the LFE signal output from the subwoofer.</li> <li>IFE+Main : The low range signal of all channels is added to the LFE signal output from the subwoofer.</li> <li>IFE+Main : The low range signal of all channels is added to the LFE signal output from the subwoofer.</li> <li>IFE+Main : The low range signal of all channels is added to the LFE signal output from the subwoofer.</li> <li>IFE+Main : The low range signal of all channels is added to the LFE signal output from the subwoofer.</li> <li>IFE+Main : The low range signal of all channels is added to the LFE signal output from the subwoofer.</li> <li>IFE+Main : The low range signal of all channels is added to the LFE signal output from the subwoofer.</li> <li>IFE+Main : The low range signal of all channels is added to the subwoofer.</li> <li>IFE+Main : The low range signal of all channels is added to the subwoofer.</li> <li>IFE+Main : The low range signal of all channels is added to the subwoofer.</li> <li>IFE+Main : The low range signal ot subwoofer.</li> </ul> |  | <ul> <li>When you select "Set Defaults" and press<br/>ENTER, the "Reset to the default values?"<br/>prompt is displayed. Select either "Yes" or<br/>"No", and press ENTER.</li> <li>Front L / Front R / F. Height L / F. Height R / Center / Subwoofer /<br/>Surround L / Surround R / Surr. Back L* / Surr. Back R* : Select<br/>speaker for distance setting.</li> <li>When the "Speaker Config." – "Surr. Back" setting (Page 121) is<br/>set to "1spkr", "Surr. Back" is displayed.</li> </ul>                             |
|  | <ul> <li>bass.</li> <li>Select "LFE+Main" if you want the bass signals to always be produced from the subwoofer.</li> <li>NOTE</li> <li>If "Front" and "Center" for "Speaker Config." are set to "Large", and "Subwoofer Mode" is set to "LFE", no sound may be output from the subwoofers, depending on the input signal or selected sound mode.</li> <li>LPF for LFE : Set LFE signal playback range. Set this when you want to change the playback frequency of the subwoofer.</li> <li>80Hz / 90Hz / 100Hz / 110Hz / 120Hz</li> </ul>   |  | <ul> <li>0.0ft - 60.0ft / 0.00m - 18.00m : Set the distance.</li> <li>The speakers that can be selected differ depending on the "Amp Assign" (<u>Page 121</u>) and "Speaker Config." (<u>Page 121</u>) settings.</li> <li>Default settings :<br/>Front L / Front R / F. Height L / F. Height R / Center / Subwoofer : 12.0 ft (3.60 m)<br/>Surround L / Surround R / Surr. Back L / Surr. Back R : 10.0 ft (3.00 m)</li> <li>Set the difference in the distance between the speakers to less than 20.0 ft (6.00 m).</li> </ul> |
|  |   |  | NOTE<br>Speakers set to "None" in "Speaker Config." (Page 121) are not<br>displayed.   |

| Test Tone Start : Output test tone.  |  |  |
|--|--|--|
| <ul> <li>the volume of the test<br/>e to be the same when it<br/>utput from each speaker.</li> <li>* When the "Speaker Config." – "Surr. Back L* / Surround L / Subwoofer : Select<br/>speaker to output test tone.</li> <li>* When the "Speaker Config." – "Surr. Back" setting (Page 121) is<br/>set to "1spkr", "Surr. Back" is displayed.</li> <li>-12.0dB - +12.0dB (0.0dB) : Adjust the volume.</li> <li>When "Levels" is adjusted, the adjusted values are set for all the sound<br/>modes.</li> <li>NOTE</li> <li>Speakers set to "None" in the "Speaker Config." (Page 121)<br/>settings are not displayed.</li> <li>When a headphones jack is inserted in the PHONES jack of this unit, the<br/>"Levels" is not displayed.</li> <li>Set Defaults : The "Levels" settings are returned to the default settings.</li> <li>Yes : Reset to the defaults.</li> <li>No : Do not reset to the defaults.</li> <li>When you select "Set Defaults" and press<br/>ENTER, the "Reset to the default values?"<br/>prompt is displayed. Select either "Yes" or<br/>"No", and press ENTER.</li> </ul> | Crossovers<br>Set the maximum frequency<br>of the bass signal output<br>from each channel to<br>the subwoofer. Set the<br>Crossover Frequency to<br>suit the bass reproduction<br>capability of the speaker<br>being used. | <ul> <li>Crossover : Set the crossover frequency.</li> <li>40Hz / 60Hz / 80Hz / 90Hz / 100Hz / 110Hz / 120Hz / 150Hz / 200Hz 250Hz / Individual : Set the crossover frequency for all speakers. See the speaker manual for information concerning speaker crossover frequency.</li> <li>The following settings can be set when the "Crossover" setting is set to "Individual".</li> <li>Front / Center / Surround / Surr. Back / Front Height : Select speake for setting of crossover frequency.</li> <li>40Hz / 60Hz / 80Hz / 90Hz / 100Hz / 110Hz / 120Hz / 150Hz / 200Hz 250Hz : Set the crossover frequency.</li> <li>40Hz / 60Hz / 80Hz / 90Hz / 100Hz / 110Hz / 120Hz / 150Hz / 200Hz 250Hz : Set the crossover frequency.</li> <li>* Crossovers" can be set when the "Bass" – "Subwoofer Mode" (CF page 122) setting is "LFE+Main", or when you have a speaker that is set to "Small".</li> <li>Always set the crossover frequency to "80Hz". When using small speakers, however, we recommend setting the crossover frequency to a higher frequency.</li> <li>For speakers set to "Small", sound below the crossover frequency is cut from the sound output. The cut bass sound is output from the subwoofer or front speakers.</li> <li>The speakers that can be set when "Individual" is selected diffe depending on to the "Subwoofer Mode" setting (CF page 122).</li> <li>When "LFE" is selected, speakers set to "Small" at "Speaker Config." can be set. If the speakers are set to "Large", "Full Band" is displayed and the setting cannot be made.</li> <li>If set to "LFE+Main", this setting can be made regardless of the speaker size.</li> </ul> |

Set the front speakers to **B** : Front speaker B is used.

**A+B** : Both front speakers A and B are used.

# NOTE

use.

This can be set when "Assign Mode" is set to

"Front B" (mpage 121).



# Network

To use this unit by connecting it to a home network (LAN), you must configure network settings. If you set up your home network (LAN) via DHCP, set "DHCP" to "On" (use the default setting). This allows this unit to use your home network (LAN).

If you assign an IP address for each device, you must use the "IP Address" setting to assign an IP address to this unit and enter the information about your home network (LAN) such as the gateway address and subnet mask.

# Menu operation

Press MAIN to switch the zone mode to the MAIN ZONE. 1 MAIN lights.

2 Press SETUP. The menu is displayed on the TV screen.

**3** Use  $\Delta \nabla$  to select the menu to be set or operated.

# **4** Press ENTER or $\triangleright$ to enter the setting.

- To return to the previous item, press <> or BACK.
- Exiting the Menu, press SETUP while the menu is displayed. The menu display disappears.

|          |       | Bluray |
|----------|-------|--------|
|          |       |        |
| TV AUDIO |       |        |
|          |       |        |
|          |       |        |
|          |       |        |
| CH/PAGE  | MUTE  | VOLUME |
| INFO     |       |        |
|          | ENTER |        |
| васк     |       | SETUP  |

# Items that can be set with the "Network" procedure

Information (Program 125)

IP Control (125)

Friendly Name (marchage 125)

Settings (Page 126)

Maintenance Mode (
page 127)

# Information

Display network information.

Setting details

#### Friendly Name / DHCP=On or Off / IP Address / MAC Address

MAC Address is required to make a vTuner account.

# **IP Control**

#### Default settings are underlined.

Set the network function on/off during standby.

#### Setting details

Off In Standby : Suspend network function during standby.

Always On : Network is on during standby. Main unit operable with a network compatible controller.

Set to "Always On" when using the web control function.



When "IP Control" is set to "Always On", it consumes more standby power.

# **Friendly Name**

The Friendly Name is the name of this unit displayed on the network. You can change the Friendly Name according to your preferences.

| Setting items   | Setting details   |  |  |
|---|---|--|--|
| Edit Name<br>Edits Friendly Name.   | <ul> <li>The default Friendly Name on first use is "marantz SR5007".</li> <li>Up to 63 characters can be input.</li> <li>For character input, see page 104.</li> </ul>  |  |  |
| <b>Set Defaults</b><br>Restores Friendly Name,<br>which you had changed, to<br>the default setting. | <ul> <li>Yes : Reset to the defaults.</li> <li>No : Do not reset to the defaults.</li> <li>When you select "Set Defaults" and press<br/>ENTER, the "Reset to the default values?"<br/>prompt is displayed. Select either "Yes" or<br/>"No", and press ENTER.</li> </ul> |  |  |

# **Settings**

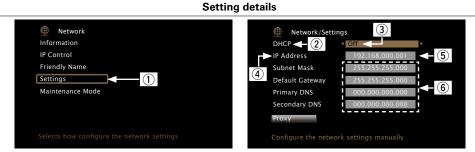
#### Default settings are underlined.

(►/Ⅲ) (►►!

A

Make settings for wired LAN.

Only set "Settings" when connecting to a network without a DHCP function.



- ① On the menu, select "Network" "Settings" and press ENTER.
- (2) Use  $\Delta \nabla$  to select "DHCP", then press **ENTER**.
- (3) Use  $\triangleleft \triangleright$  to select "Off", then press **ENTER**.
- (4) Use  $\Delta \nabla$  to select "IP Address", then press **ENTER**.
- IP Address : Set the IP address within the ranges shown below. The Network Audio function cannot be used if other IP addresses are set. CLASS A: 10.0.0.1 – 10.255.255.254 CLASS B: 172.16.0.1 – 172.31.255.254 CLASS C: 192.168.0.1 – 192.168.255.254
- (5) Use  $\Delta \nabla \triangleleft \triangleright$  to input the address and press **ENTER**.
- (6) Use  $\Delta \nabla$  to select the setting item, then press **ENTER**.
  - **Subnet Mask** : When connecting an xDSL modem or terminal adapter directly to this unit, input the subnet mask indicated in the documentation supplied by your provider. Normally input 255.255.255.0.
  - Default Gateway : When connected to a gateway (router), input its IP address.
  - **Primary DNS, Secondary DNS** : If there is only one DNS address indicated in the documentation supplied by your provider, input it at "Primary DNS". If there are two or more DNS addresses, input the first one at "Secondary DNS".
- Press <I or BACK.</li>

The display returns to the original screen.

• When connecting to the network via a Proxy server, select "Proxy" and press **ENTER** (<u>Proxy "Proxy settings</u>").

• If you are using a broadband router (DHCP function), there is no need to make the settings at "IP Address" and "Proxy", since the DHCP function is set to "On" in this unit's default settings.

Setting details

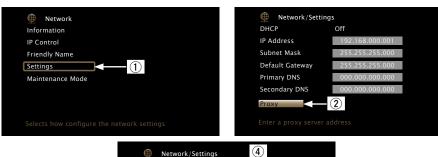
- If this unit is being used connected to a network without the DHCP function, the network settings must be made. In this case, some knowledge of networks is required. For details, consult a network administrator.
- If you cannot connect to the Internet, recheck the connections and settings (page 25).
- If you do not understand about Internet connection, contact your ISP (Internet Service Provider) or the store from which you purchased your computer.
- When you want to cancel the setting during IP address input, press  $\triangleleft$  or **BACK**.

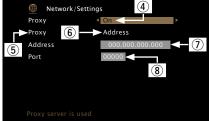
#### Setting details

#### Proxy settings

Make this setting when connecting to the Internet via a proxy server.

Make the proxy settings only when you connect to the Internet via a proxy server that is on your internal network or provided by your provider, etc.





- 1 On the menu, select "Network" "Settings" and press  $\ensuremath{\textbf{ENTER}}$  .
- (2) Use  $\Delta \nabla$  to select "Proxy" and press ENTER.
- ③ Press ENTER again.
- ④ Use  $\triangleleft \triangleright$  to select "On" and press **ENTER**.
- (5) Press  $\nabla$  to select "Proxy", then press **ENTER**.

Name : Select when inputting by domain name.

O Press  $\nabla$  to select "Address" or "Name", then press **ENTER**.

When "Address" is selected in step (6) : Use  $\Delta \nabla \triangleleft \triangleright$  to enter the proxy server address, and press **ENTER**.

When "Name" is selected in step (6): Use the software keyboard (137 page 104) to enter the domain name, and select .

• For character input, see page 104.

- ⑧ Press ∇ to select "Port", then press ENTER. Use △∇⊲▷ to input the proxy server port number and press ENTER. Setup is complete.

The display returns to the original screen.

# CHIER CHIER



# **Maintenance Mode**

Use when receiving maintenance from a marantz service engineer or custom installer.

#### Setting details

## NOTE

Only use this function if so instructed by a marantz serviceperson or installer.



# Make various other settings.

# Menu operation

| <b>Press MAIN to switch the zone mode to the MAIN ZONE.</b><br>MAIN lights.  | ZONE SELECT POWER<br>MAIN (ZONE 2) (SLEP) (U)            |
|--|--|
| <b>2</b> Press SETUP.<br>The menu is displayed on the TV screen.   | (CBL/SAT) (DVD) (Blurray)                                |
| <b>3</b> Use $	riangle  abla$ to select the menu to be set or operated.  | (GAME) (AUX) (MERA<br>PLAYER)<br>(TV AUDIO) (CD) (TUNER) |
| <b>4</b> Press ENTER or $\triangleright$ to enter the setting.   | Red<br>JUSS PHONO MAXPort<br>NETWORK (NTEPRET<br>RADIO   |
| <ul> <li>To return to the previous item, press <i back.<="" li="" or=""> <li>Exiting the Menu, press SETUP while the menu is displayed.<br/>The menu display disappears.</li> </i></li></ul> | CH/PMCE MELTE VOLUME                                     |
|  | NFO OPTION   |
|  | BACK SETUP   |

# Items that can be set with the "General" procedure

| Language (129)            |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| ZONE2 Setup (129)         |  |
| Zone Rename (🖙 page 129)  |  |
| Trigger Out (🖙 page 129)  |  |
| Auto Standby (Ppage 130)  |  |
| Front Display (130)       |  |
| Information (FP page 130) |  |
| Firmware (127 page 131)   |  |
| Setup Lock (12) page 133) |  |

GUI

# Language

#### Default settings are underlined.

Set the language for display on the menu screen.

Setting details

#### English / Français / Español

#### ø

"Language" can also be set by the following procedure. However, the menu screen is not displayed. Following the display content to make the setting.

- 1. Press and hold the main unit's **STATUS** and **ZONE2 SOURCE** for at least 3 seconds. "Video Format < NTSC >" appears on the display.
- 2. Press the main unit's **DISPLAY** and set "GUI Language ENGLISH".
- 3. Use the main unit's **PRESET CH +**, and set the language.
- 4. Press the main unit's **STATUS** to complete the setting.

# **ZONE2 Setup**

Default settings are underlined.

Set the audio to play back with ZONE2.

• "ZONE2 Setup" is displayed when "ZONE2" is selected with "Assign Mode" (mpage 121).

| Setting items   | Setting details  |
|---|--|
| <b>Lch Level</b><br>Adjust the left channel<br>output level.  | –12dB – +12dB ( <u>0dB</u> )   |
| <b>Rch Level</b><br>Adjust the right channel<br>output level.   | –12dB – +12dB ( <u>0dB</u> )   |
| <b>Volume Limit</b><br>Make a setting for<br>maximum volume.  | <ul> <li>Off : Do not set a maximum volume.</li> <li>60 (-20dB) / 70 (-10dB) / 80 (0dB)</li> <li></li></ul>  |
| <b>Power On Volume</b><br>Define the volume setting<br>that is active when the<br>power is turned on. | <ul> <li>Last : Use the memorized setting from the last session.</li> <li>Mute : Always mute when power is turned on.</li> <li>1 - 98 (-79dB - 18dB) : The volume is adjusted to the set level.</li> <li>✓ This is displayed from -79 dB to 18 dB when "Scale" (137 page 108) is set to "-79.5dB - 18.0dB".</li> </ul> |
| Mute Level<br>Set the amount of<br>attenuation when muting<br>is on.                                  | <ul> <li>Full : The sound is muted entirely.</li> <li>-40dB : The sound is attenuated by 40 dB down.</li> <li>-20dB : The sound is attenuated by 20 dB down.</li> </ul>  |

# **Zone Rename**

Change the display title of each zone to one you prefer.

#### Setting details

#### MAIN ZONE / ZONE2

- Up to 10 characters can be input.
- For character input, see page 104.

# **Trigger Out**

Selects when to activate trigger out.

For details about how to connect the DC OUT jacks, see "DC OUT jacks" (127 page 90).

#### Setting details

| When setting for zone (MAIN ZONE / ZONE2)                                      |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|
| Trigger out is activated through linkage to the power of the zone set to "On". |  |  |  |
| When setting for input source  |  |  |  |
| Activate trigger out when the input source set to "On" is selected.            |  |  |  |
| Active for the zone set to "On" with "When setting for zone".                  |  |  |  |

- On : Activate trigger on this mode.
- – – : Do not activate trigger on this mode.

# Auto Standby

#### Default settings are underlined.

When you do not perform any operation on this unit with no audio or video input for a specified time, this unit automatically enters the standby mode. Before it enters the standby mode, "Auto Standby" is displayed on the display of this unit and the menu screen.

|                             | Setting details  | Audio<br>Show information                                      |
|-----------------------------|--|--|
| 60min : The unit goes inte  | o standby after 30 minutes.<br>o standby after 60 minutes.<br>o into standby automatically.  | audio input signal   |
| Front Display               | Default settings are underlined.   |  |
| Adjust the display brightne | ess of this unit.  |  |
| Setting items               | Setting details  |  |
| Display                     | <u>On</u> : Display is always on.<br><b>Auto OFF</b> : Display is off except when showing the status display.<br><b>Off</b> : Display is always off. |  |
|                             | This can also be set by pressing <b>DISPLAY</b> on the main unit.<br>Each time <b>DISPLAY</b> is pressed, the setting is changed as shown<br>below.  |  |
|                             | On Auto Off Off Off  |  |
|                             | <b>NOTE</b><br>When "Display" is set to "Off", the display turns off and appears as if there is no electricity.                                      | Video<br>Show information<br>HDMI input/output<br>and monitor. |

# Information

Show information about receiver settings, input signals, etc.

| Items   | Setting details  |  |
|---|--|--|
| <b>Audio</b><br>Show information about<br>audio input signals.                    | <ul> <li>Sound Mode : The currently set surround mode.</li> <li>Input Signal : The input signal type.</li> <li>Format : The number of input signal channels (presence of front, surround LFE).</li> <li>Sample Rate : The input signal's sampling frequency.</li> <li>Offset : The dialogue normalization correction value.</li> <li>Flag : This is displayed when inputting signals including a surround back channel. "MATRIX" is displayed with Dolby Digital EX and DTS-ES Matrix signals, "DISCRETE" with DTS-ES Discrete signals.</li> </ul> |  |
|   | Dialogue normalization function  |  |
|   | This function is automatically activated when playing Dolby Digital sources.<br>It automatically corrects the standard signal level for individual program sources.<br>The correction value can be checked using the <b>STATUS</b> on the main unit.<br>(t) + t = t + t + t + t + t + t + t + t + t  |  |
|   | The figure is the corrected value. This cannot be changed.   |  |
| Video<br>Show information about   | Signal<br>• Resolution / Color Space / Pixel Depth   |  |
| HDMI input/output signals<br>and monitor.<br>Monitor<br>• Interface / Resolutions |  |  |

Default settings are underlined.

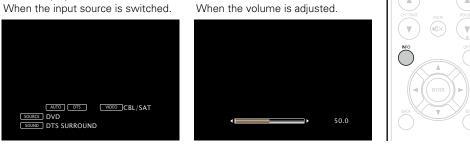
| Items  | Setting details  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|
| <b>ZONE</b><br>Show information about<br>current settings. | <ul> <li>MAIN ZONE : This item shows information about settings for MAIN ZONE. The information displayed differs according to the input source.</li> <li>ZONE Name / Select Source / Name / Sound Mode / Input Mode / Decode Mode / HDMI / Digital / Component / Video Select / Video Mode / Content Type / Video Conversion / i/p Scaler / Resolution / Progressive Mode / Aspect Ratio etc.</li> </ul> |  |  |
|  | <ul> <li>ZONE2 : This item shows information about settings for ZONE2.</li> <li>ZONE Name / Power / Select Source / Volume Level</li> </ul>  |  |  |
|  | "Volume Level" for ZONE2 is displayed when "Assign Mode"<br>(CP page 121) is set to "ZONE2".   |  |  |
| Firmware   | Version : Displays information for the current firmware.   |  |  |

# 

Press INFO to display current source name, volume, sound mode name, and other information at the bottom of the screen.

# Examples of screen display

- Status display screen
- When the input source is switched.



Status display: The operating status appears briefly on the screen when the input source is switched or the volume is changed.

# NOTE

The status display screen cannot be displayed at a computer's resolution (e.g. VGA) or while certain 3D video contents is being played.

# **Firmware**

Set whether or not to check for firmware update, update the firmware, and display update and upgrade notifications.

| Setting items  | Setting details  |  |
|--|--|--|
| Update<br>Update the firmware of the<br>receiver.<br>NOTE<br>In cases where it is not<br>possible to connect to<br>the network after doing a<br>firmware update, connect<br>to the network again using<br>"Network" (mpage 124). | approximately how low<br>Update Start : Execu<br>When updating starts,<br>screen is shut down.<br>displayed.<br>When updating is com<br>normal status is resum<br>• If updating fails, the<br>possible, one of the | Check for firmware updates. You can also check<br>ng it will take to complete an update.<br>te the update process.<br>the STANDBY indicator becomes red and the menu<br>The amount of update time which has elapsed is<br>nplete, the STANDBY indicator becomes green and<br>ned.<br>set automatically retries, but if updating is still not<br>messages shown below is displayed. If the display<br>ow, check the settings and network environment, |
|  | Display  | Description  |
|  | Updating fail  | Updating failed.   |
|  | Login failed   | Failure to log into server.  |

| Updating fail   | Updating failed.                             |  |
|-----------------|--|--|
| Login failed    | Failure to log into server.                  |  |
| Server is busy  | Server is busy. Wait a while then try again. |  |
| Connection fail | Failure in connecting to server.             |  |
| Download fail   | Downloading of the firmware has failed.      |  |

#### Setting details

#### Notifications

Displays a notification message on this unit's menu screen when the latest firmware is released with "Update". Display a notification message on this unit's menu screen when downloadable firmware is released with "Add New Feature".

Setting items

 
 Update : The notification message is displayed for about 20 seconds when the power is turned on. Connect to broadband Internet (1) page 25)
 Ac

 when using this function.
 Call
 Ca

- <u>On</u> : Display update message.
- Off : Do not display update message.

#### ø

• When you press **ENTER** during display of the notification message, the "Check for Update" screen is displayed (Refer to <u>page 131</u> for more information on "Update").



• Press ⊲ or **BACK** to erase the notification message.

**Upgrade** : The notification message is displayed for about 20 seconds when the power is turned on. Connect to broadband Internet (Tarpage 25) when using this function.

- On : Display upgrade message.
- Off : Do not display upgrade message.

### ø

- When you press **ENTER** during display of the notification message, the "Add New Feature" screen is displayed (Refer to <u>page 132</u> for more information on "Add New Feature").
- Press <I or BACK to erase the notification message.</li>

## Setting items

Add New Feature Display new features that can be downloaded to this unit and perform an upgrade.

# NOTE

In cases where it is not possible to connect to the network after adding a new function, connect to the network again using "Network" (2 page 124).

#### Setting details

Upgrade Package : Display the items to be upgraded.

**Upgrade Status** : Display a list of the additional functions provided by the upgrade.

**Upgrade Start** : Execute the upgrade process.

When the upgrade starts, the STANDBY indicator becomes red and the menu screen is shut down. During the upgrade, the amount of upgrade time which has elapsed is displayed.

When upgrading is complete, the STANDBY indicator becomes green and normal status is resumed.

- If the upgrade is not successful, an error message identical to those in "Update" will appear on the display. Check the settings and network environment and then perform the upgrade again.
- See the marantz website for details about upgrades.

When the procedure is complete, "Registered" is displayed in this menu and upgrades can be carried out. If the procedure has not been carried out, "Not Registered" is displayed.

The ID number shown on this screen is needed when carrying out the procedure.

The ID number can also be displayed by pressing and holding the main unit's **STATUS** and **SOUND MODE** for at least 3 seconds.

#### Notes concerning use of "Update" and "Add New Feature"

- In order to use these functions, you must have the correct system requirements and settings for a broadband Internet connection (page 25).
- Do not turn off the power until updating or upgrading is completed.
- Even with a broadband connection to the Internet, approximately 1 hour is required for the updating/ upgrading procedure to be completed.
- Once updating/upgrade starts, normal operations on this unit cannot be performed until updating/ upgrading is completed. Furthermore, there may be cases where backup data is reset for the parameters, etc., set on this unit.
- If the update or upgrade fails, press and hold the **O**ON/STANDBY on the main unit for more than 5 seconds, or remove and re-insert the power cord. "Update retry" appears on the display and update restarts from the point at which update failed. If the error continues despite this, check the network environment.

# <u>s</u>

• Information regarding the "Update" function and "Add New Feature" will be announced on the marantz web site each time related plans are defined.

When usable new firmware is released with "Update" or "Add New Feature", a notification message is displayed on the menu screen. When you do not want to be notified, set "Notifications" – "Update" (page 132) and "Notifications" – "Upgrade" (page 132) to "Off".

### General

## Default settings are underlined.

Setup Lock
Protect settings from inadvertent change.

| Setting items | Setting details   |  |  |  |  |  |
|---------------|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| Lock          | <ul> <li>On : Turn protection on.</li> <li>Off : Turn protection off.</li> <li>When canceling the setting, set "Lock" to "Off".</li> </ul>    |  |  |  |  |  |
|               | When "Lock" is set to "On", the settings listed below can no longer<br>be changed. Also, "Setup Lock!" is displayed if you attempt to operate |  |  |  |  |  |
|               | related settings.<br>• Setup menu operations  |  |  |  |  |  |



# Informations

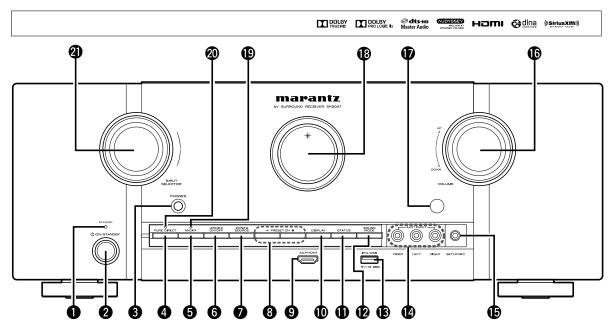
Here, we list various information related to this unit. Please refer to this information as needed.

- Part names and functions 
   <u>Page 135</u>
- Other information page 140
- Troubleshooting 
   <u>page 150</u>
- Specifications 27 page 155
- Index page 156

# **Part names and functions**

# **Front panel**

For buttons not explained here, see the page indicated in parentheses ().



# **1** STANDBY indicator (34)

- **(STANDBY indicator status)**
- Power on : Off
- Normal standby : Red
- When "HDMI Control" (Page 112) is set to "On" : Orange
- When "IP Control" (mpage 125) is set to "Always On" : Orange

# **2** Power operation button

- Turns power to this unit on and off (standby).

#### **3** Headphones jack (PHONES)

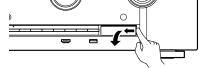
When the headphones are plugged into this jack, audio will no longer be output from the connected speakers.

# NOTE

To prevent hearing loss, do not raise the volume level excessively when using headphones.

| PURE DIRECT button                |
|-----------------------------------|
| <b>5</b> M-DAX button             |
| <b>6</b> ZONE2 ON/OFF button (98) |
| <b>ZONE2 SOURCE button</b> (98)   |
| 8 Tuner preset channel buttons    |

| AUX-HDMI connector                          |   |
|---|---|
| DISPLAY button (130)                        |   |
| <b>①</b> STATUS button                      |   |
| SOUND MODE button                           | , |
| (19) IPod/USB port                          | , |
| AUX1 INPUT connectors                       | , |
| Remove the cap covering the connectors when |   |
| you want to use them.                       |   |
|   |   |

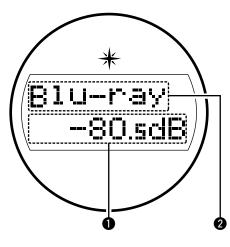


| <b>(</b> <u>29</u> , <u>87</u> ) |
|----------------------------------|
| <b>()</b> VOLUME knob            |
| Remote control sensor (139)      |
| ( <u>136</u> )                   |
| M-DAX indicator     (108)        |
| PURE DIRECT indicator     (71)   |
| <b>(34</b> , <u>154</u> )        |

# Display

The input source name, surround mode, setting values and other information are displayed here.

# 🗆 Standard display

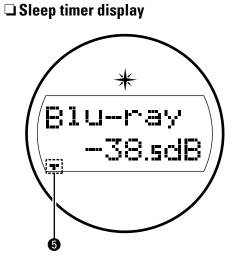


# Master volume indicator

#### Input source indicator

The currently selected input source name is displayed.

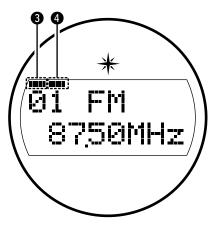
If the input source name has been changed using "Source Rename" (Page 118) in the menu, the input source name after the change is displayed.



5 This lights when the sleep mode is selected (Ppage 92).

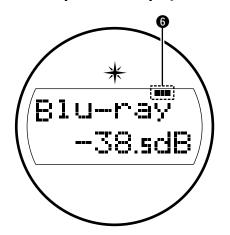
# □ Tuner display

These light according to the reception conditions when the input source is set to "FM".



3 Lights up when the broadcast is properly turned in.

In the FM mode, this lights up when receiving stereo broadcasts.

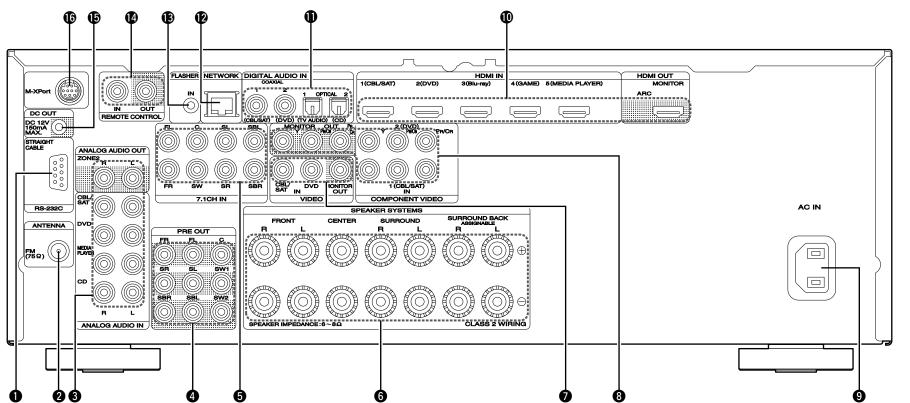


**ZONE2** power on display

**6** This lights up when ZONE2 (separate room) power is turned on (<u>Page 98</u>).

# **Rear panel**

See the page indicated in parentheses ().



| 1 RC-232C connector (90)  |
|---|
| <b>2</b> FM antenna terminal (ANTENNA)                                |
| Analog audio connectors     (ANALOG AUDIO IN/ANALOG AUDIO OUT)        |
|   |
| <b>4 PRE OUT connectors</b>   |
| <b>5</b> 7.1ch input connectors (7.1CH IN)                            |
| Speaker terminals (SPEAKER SYSTEMS)                                   |
| ( <u>80, 81, 82, 83, 84, 85, 86</u> )                                 |
| <b>Video connectors (VIDEO)</b> ( <u>13</u> , <u>14</u> , <u>15</u> ) |

| Component video connectors   |
|--|
| (COMPONENT VIDEO)  |
| <b>9</b> AC inlet (AC IN) (26)   |
| <b>(</b> 9, <u>10</u> )  |
| Digital audio connectors   |
| (DIGITAL AUDIO IN) ( <u>13</u> , <u>14</u> , <u>15</u> , <u>16</u> , <u>17</u> , <u>20</u> ) |
| Network connector (NETWORK)  |
| 🚯 FLASHER IN jack  |
| Lland when weing a control DOV or other such control devices to                              |

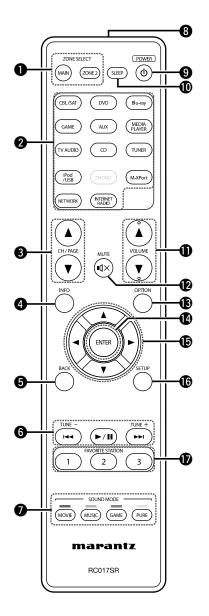
Used when using a control BOX or other such control devices to control this unit.

| BREMOTE CONTROL connectors | ( <u>89</u> ) |
|----------------------------|---------------|
| DC OUT jacks               | ( <u>90</u> ) |
| M-XPort connector          | ( <u>22</u> ) |
| NOTE                       |               |

Do not touch the inner pins of the connectors on the rear panel. Electrostatic discharge may cause permanent damage to the unit.

# Remote control unit

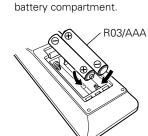
For buttons not explained here, see the page indicated in parentheses ().



| (105, 111, 116, 120, 124, 128)<br>(i) System buttons<br>(38, 41, 56, 62)<br>• Skip buttons (I◄◄, ►►I)<br>• Play/pause button (►/II)<br>Tuning up / Tuning down buttons<br>(TUNE +, -) (42, 43)<br>(i) SOUND MODE buttons<br>• (10)<br>• MOVIE button<br>• MUSIC button<br>• PURE button<br>• PURE button<br>(139)<br>(i) SLEEP button<br>(j) (j) (j) (j) (j) (j) (j) (j) (j) (j)   | <b>O</b> ZONE SELECT buttons |
|--|------------------------------|
| <ul> <li>3 Channel/page search buttons<br/>(CH/PAGE ▲▼)<br/></li></ul>   |                              |
| (CH/PAGE ▲▼)<br>   | -                            |
| (38, 41, 49, 52, 56, 59, 62, 64)<br>④ Information button (INFO) (130)<br>⑤ BACK button (105, 111, 116, 120, 124, 128)<br>⑥ System buttons (1 $\lt$ ( $\checkmark$ ) $\blacktriangleright$ )<br>• Skip buttons (1 $\lt$ ( $\checkmark$ ) $\vdash$ )<br>• Play/pause button ( $\vdash$ /II)<br>Tuning up / Tuning down buttons (TUNE +, -) (42, 43)<br>⑦ SOUND MODE buttons (71)<br>• MOVIE button ( $\lor$ /II)<br>• MUSIC button ( $\lor$ /II)<br>• MUSIC button ( $\lor$ /II)<br>• MUSIC button ( $\lor$ /II)<br>• DURE button ( $\lor$ /II)<br>• DURE button ( $\lor$ /II)<br>• DURE button ( $\lor$ /II)<br>• Clume button ( $\lor$ /II) ( $\circlearrowright$ /II)<br>• MUTE button ( $\lor$ /II) ( $\lor$ /II)<br>• Clume button ( $\lor$ /II) ( $\lor$ /II)<br>• MUTE button ( $\lor$ /II)<br>• (103, 105, 111, 116, 120, 124, 128)<br><b>⑤</b> SETUP button ( $!$ (105, 111, 116, 120, 124, 128)<br><b>⑥</b> SETUP button (105, 111, 116, 120, 124, 128)<br><b>⑦</b> FAVORITE STATION buttons |                              |
| ④ Information button (INFO)       (130)         ⑤ BACK button       (105, 111, 116, 120, 124, 128)         ⑥ System buttons       (38, 41, 56, 62)         • Skip buttons (I◄◄, ▷►I)       • Play/pause button (▷/III)         Tuning up / Tuning down buttons<br>(TUNE +, -)       (42, 43)         ⑦ SOUND MODE buttons       (71)         • MOVIE button       (71)         • MUSIC button       (42, 43)         ⑦ SOUND MODE buttons       (71)         • MOVIE button       (42, 43)         ⑦ SOUND MODE buttons       (71)         • MOVIE button       (42, 43)         ⑦ SOUND MODE buttons       (71)         • MOVIE button       (42, 43)         ⑦ SOUND MODE buttons       (71)         • MOVIE button       (42, 43)         ⑦ SOUND MODE buttons       (71)         • MOVIE button       (42, 43)         ⑨ POWER button       (71)         • MUSIC button       (34)         ⑨ SLEEP button ( $\emptyset$ )       (34)         ⑩ SLEEP button ( $\emptyset$ )       (35, 98)         ⑩ OPTION button       (36, 40, 42, 51, 56, 58)         ⑩ ENTER button       (36, 40, 42, 51, 56, 58)         ⑩ ENTER button       (103, 105, 111, 116, 120, 124, 128)         ⑩ SETUP button  |                              |
| <ul> <li>③ BACK button <ul> <li>(105, 111, 116, 120, 124, 128)</li> </ul> </li> <li>④ System buttons <ul> <li>(38, 41, 56, 62)</li> <li>Skip buttons (I◄◄, ►►I)</li> <li>Play/pause button (►/II)</li> </ul> </li> <li>Tuning up / Tuning down buttons <ul> <li>(TUNE +, -)</li> <li>(42, 43)</li> </ul> </li> <li>⑦ SOUND MODE buttons <ul> <li>(71)</li> <li>MOVIE button</li> <li>(42, 43)</li> </ul> </li> <li>⑦ SOUND MODE buttons <ul> <li>(71)</li> <li>MOVIE button</li> <li>(42, 43)</li> </ul> </li> <li>⑦ SOUND MODE buttons <ul> <li>(71)</li> <li>MOVIE button</li> <li>(34)</li> </ul> </li> <li>⑨ POWER button (<ul> <li>(4▼)</li> <li>(35, 98)</li> </ul> </li> <li>⑨ OPTION button <ul> <li>(36, 40, 42, 51, 56, 58)</li> </ul> </li> <li>⑧ ENTER button <ul> <li>(103, 105, 111, 116, 120, 124, 128)</li> </ul> </li> <li>⑨ SETUP button <ul> <li>(105, 111, 116, 120, 124, 128)</li> </ul> </li> <li>⑨ FAVORITE STATION buttons</li> </ul>  | -                            |
| <ul> <li>③ System buttons <ul> <li>(38, 41, 56, 62)</li> <li>Skip buttons (I◄◄, ►►I)</li> <li>Play/pause button (►/II)</li> </ul> </li> <li>Tuning up / Tuning down buttons <ul> <li>(TUNE +, -)</li> <li>(42, 43)</li> </ul> </li> <li>⑦ SOUND MODE buttons <ul> <li>(71)</li> <li>MOVIE button</li> <li>(42, 43)</li> </ul> </li> <li>⑦ SOUND MODE buttons <ul> <li>(71)</li> <li>MOVIE button</li> <li>(42, 43)</li> </ul> </li> <li>⑦ SOUND MODE buttons <ul> <li>(71)</li> <li>MOVIE button</li> <li>(42, 43)</li> </ul> </li> <li>⑦ SOUND MODE buttons <ul> <li>(71)</li> <li>MOVIE button</li> <li>(71)</li> <li>MOVIE button</li> <li>(71)</li> <li>MOVIE button</li> <li>(139)</li> </ul> </li> <li>⑦ POWER button ((0)) <ul> <li>(34)</li> </ul> </li> <li>⑨ SLEEP button</li> <li>(92, 99)</li> <li>⑨ VOLUME buttons (▲▼) <ul> <li>(35, 98)</li> </ul> </li> <li>⑨ OPTION button <ul> <li>(36, 40, 42, 51, 56, 58)</li> </ul> </li> <li>⑧ ENTER button <ul> <li>(103, 105, 111, 116, 120, 124, 128)</li> </ul> </li> <li>⑤ Cursor buttons (△▽&lt;&lt;&gt;) <ul> <li>(103, 105, 111, 116, 120, 124, 128)</li> </ul> </li> <li>⑧ SETUP button <ul> <li>(105, 111, 116, 120, 124, 128)</li> </ul> </li> <li>⑧ FAVORITE STATION buttons</li> </ul>  | <b>5</b> BACK button         |
| (38, 41, 56, 62)<br>• Skip buttons (I◄◄, ►►I)<br>• Play/pause button (►/II)<br>Tuning up / Tuning down buttons<br>(TUNE +, -)  |                              |
| <ul> <li>Skip buttons (I◄◄, ▷►I)</li> <li>Play/pause button (▷/II)</li> <li>Tuning up / Tuning down buttons (TUNE +, -)</li></ul>  |                              |
| <ul> <li>Play/pause button (►/II) Tuning up / Tuning down buttons (TUNE +, -)</li></ul>  |                              |
| (TUNE +, -)  | -                            |
| <ul> <li>SOUND MODE buttons</li></ul>  |                              |
| • MOVIE button<br>• MUSIC button<br>• GAME button<br>• PURE button<br><b>3</b> Remote control signal transmitter (139)<br><b>9</b> POWER button ( $(0)$ ) (34)<br><b>10</b> SLEEP button ( $(0)$ ) (34)<br><b>10</b> SLEEP button ( $(0)$ ) (35, 98)<br><b>10</b> VOLUME buttons ( $\Delta \nabla$ ) (35, 98)<br><b>10</b> MUTE button ( $(1 \times 1)$ ) (35, 98)<br><b>11</b> POTION button<br>(103, 105, 111, 116, 120, 124, 128)<br><b>12</b> Cursor buttons ( $\Delta \nabla \triangleleft \triangleright$ )<br>(103, 105, 111, 116, 120, 124, 128)<br><b>13</b> SETUP button<br>(105, 111, 116, 120, 124, 128)<br><b>15</b> FAVORITE STATION buttons   | -                            |
| <ul> <li>MUSIC button</li> <li>GAME button</li> <li>PURE button</li> <li>POWER button (\$\dots\)</li> <li>(34)</li> <li>SLEEP button (\$\dots\)</li> <li>VOLUME buttons (\$\Dots\)</li> <li>MUTE button (\$\dots\)</li> <li>OPTION button</li> <li>(35, 98)</li> <li>OPTION button</li> <li>(36, 40, 42, 51, 56, 58)</li> <li>ENTER button</li> <li>(103, 105, 111, 116, 120, 124, 128)</li> <li>Cursor buttons (\$\Dots\)</li> <li>(103, 105, 111, 116, 120, 124, 128)</li> <li>SETUP button</li> <li>(105, 111, 116, 120, 124, 128)</li> <li>FAVORITE STATION buttons</li> </ul>   |                              |
| <ul> <li>GAME button</li> <li>PURE button</li> <li>POWER button (ⓓ)</li></ul>  |                              |
| <ul> <li>3 Remote control signal transmitter (139)</li> <li>9 POWER button (☉) (34)</li> <li>10 SLEEP button (☉) (92, 99)</li> <li>10 VOLUME buttons (▲▼) (35, 98)</li> <li>10 MUTE button (¬(×)) (35, 98)</li> <li>10 OPTION button (36, 40, 42, 51, 56, 58)</li> <li>11 ENTER button (103, 105, 111, 116, 120, 124, 128)</li> <li>11 Cursor buttons (△▽&lt;↓▷) (103, 105, 111, 116, 120, 124, 128)</li> <li>11 SETUP button (105, 111, 116, 120, 124, 128)</li> <li>11 FAVORITE STATION buttons</li> </ul>   |                              |
| <ul> <li>9 POWER button (₺)</li></ul>  | • PURE button                |
| <ul> <li><b>(</b>) SLEEP button</li></ul>  | -                            |
| <ul> <li><b>WOLUME buttons (▲▼)</b></li></ul>  |                              |
| <ul> <li>WUTE button (⊄×)</li></ul>  |                              |
| <ul> <li>③ OPTION button         <ul> <li>(36, 40, 42, 51, 56, 58)</li> <li>④ ENTER button</li></ul></li></ul>   | -                            |
| (36, 40, 42, 51, 56, 58)<br><b>♦</b> ENTER button<br>(103, 105, 111, 116, 120, 124, 128)<br><b>♦</b> Cursor buttons (△▽⊲▷)<br>(103, 105, 111, 116, 120, 124, 128)<br><b>♦</b> SETUP button<br>(105, 111, 116, 120, 124, 128)<br><b>♦</b> FAVORITE STATION buttons  |                              |
| <ul> <li>✔ ENTER button         <ul> <li>(103, 105, 111, 116, 120, 124, 128)</li> <li>✔ Cursor buttons (△▽⊲▷)</li></ul></li></ul>  | -                            |
| <ul> <li>(103, 105, 111, 116, 120, 124, 128)</li> <li>Cursor buttons (△▽⊲▷)</li> <li>(103, 105, 111, 116, 120, 124, 128)</li> <li>SETUP button</li> <li>(105, 111, 116, 120, 124, 128)</li> <li>FAVORITE STATION buttons</li> </ul>  | •                            |
| <ul> <li>Cursor buttons (△▽⊲ ▷)<br/></li></ul>   | •                            |
| (103, 105, 111, 116, 120, 124, 128)<br>SETUP button<br>(105, 111, 116, 120, 124, 128)<br>FAVORITE STATION buttons  | -                            |
| ( <u>105</u> , <u>111</u> , <u>116</u> , <u>120</u> , <u>124</u> , <u>128</u> )<br><b>FAVORITE STATION buttons</b>   |                              |
| FAVORITE STATION buttons   | C SETUP button               |
|  | -                            |
| (1 - 3)  |                              |
|  | (1 - 3)                      |

# Inserting the batteries

- Remove the rear lid in the direction of the arrow and remove it.



(2) Load the two batteries properly

as indicated by the marks in the

③ Put the rear cover back on.

## NOTE

- Insert the specified batteries in the remote control unit.
- Replace the batteries with new ones if the set does not operate even when the remote control unit is operated close to the unit. (The supplied batteries are only for verifying operation. Replace them with new batteries at an early date.)
- When inserting the batteries, be sure to do so in the proper direction, following the ⊕ and ⊖ marks in the battery compartment.
- To prevent damage or leakage of battery fluid:
- Do not use a new battery together with an old one.
- Do not use two different types of batteries.
- Do not attempt to charge dry batteries.
- Do not short-circuit, disassemble, heat or dispose of batteries in flames.
- Do not keep the battery in a place exposed to direct sunlight or in places with extremely high temperatures, such as near a heater.
- If the battery fluid should leak, carefully wipe the fluid off the inside of the battery compartment and insert new batteries.
- Remove the batteries from the remote control unit if it will not be in use for long periods.
- Used batteries should be disposed of in accordance with the local regulations regarding battery disposal.
- The remote control unit may function improperly if rechargeable batteries are used.

# Operating range of the remote control unit

Point the remote control unit at the remote sensor when operating it.

Approx. 23 ft/7 m

# NOTE

- The set may function improperly or the remote control unit may not operate if the remote control sensor is exposed to direct sunlight, strong artificial light from an inverter type fluorescent lamp or infrared light.
- When using 3D video devices that transmit radio communication signals (such as infrared signals etc) between the various units (such as the monitor, 3D glasses, 3D transmitter unit etc), the remote control unit may not operate due to interference from those radio communication signals. If this occurs, adjust the direction and distance of the 3D communication for each unit, and check that the remote control unit operation is not affected by these signals.

# Specifying the zone used with the remote control unit

When the **ZONE2** button is pressed, only the MAIN ZONE can be operated with the remote control unit.

# Press and hold ZONE2 and SETUP. MAIN and ZONE2 button blink.

# 🗆 To cancel

Press and hold ZONE2 and SETUP. MAIN and ZONE2 button blink.

# **Other information**

- □ Trademark information (☞ page 140)
- □ Surround (☞ page 141)
- □ Relationship between video signals and monitor output (1257 page 145)
- □ Explanation of terms (127 page 147)

# **Trademark information**

This product uses the following technologies (Random order):



DYNAMIC VOLUME

Manufactured under license from Audyssey Laboratories<sup>™</sup>. U.S. and foreign patents pending. Audyssey MultEQ<sup>®</sup> XT, Audyssey Dynamic EQ<sup>®</sup> and Audyssey Dynamic Volume<sup>®</sup> are registered trademarks of Audyssey Laboratories.



Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. "Dolby", "Pro Logic" and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.



Manufactured under license under U.S. Patent Nos: 5,956,674; 5,974,380; 6,226,616; 6,487,535; 7,212,872; 7,333,929; 7,392,195; 7,272,567 & other U.S. and worldwide patents issued & pending. DTS-HD, the Symbol, & DTS-HD and the Symbol together are registered trademarks & DTS-HD Master Audio is a trademark of DTS, Inc. Product includes software. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

# нэш

The terms HDMI and HDMI High-Definition Multimedia Interface, and the HDMI Logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC in the United States and other countries.





"Made for iPod" and "Made for iPhone" mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod, or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards.

Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod, or iPhone, may affect wireless performance.

AirPlay, the AirPlay logo, iPad, iPhone, iPod, iPod classic, iPod nano, iPod shuffle and iPod touch are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

 Individual users are permitted to use iPhone, iPod, iPod classic, iPod nano, iPod shuffle, and iPod touch for private copy and playback of non-copyrighted contents and contents whose copy and playback is permitted by law. Copyright infringement is prohibited by law.



Windows Media and the Windows logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

This unit is equipped with a digital signal processing circuit that lets you play program sources in the sound mode to achieve the same sense of presence as in a movie theater.

# Sound modes and surround parameters

This table shows the speakers that can be used in each sound mode and the surround parameters adjustable in each sound mode.

## Symbols in the table

○ This indicates the audio output channels or surround parameters that can be set.

This indicates the audio output channels. The output channels depend on the settings of "Speaker Config." (Prage 121).

|                                      | Channel output |            |                 |                   |                     |           | Surround Parameter (1277 page 106) |   |   |   |  |
|--------------------------------------|----------------|------------|-----------------|-------------------|---------------------|-----------|------------------------------------|---|---|---|--|
| Sound Mode (17 page 71)              | Front<br>L/R   | Center     | Surround<br>L/R | Surround back L/R | Front height<br>L/R | Subwoofer | Home Theater EQ<br>(1277 page 106) | Loudness Management<br>*2<br>(12) page 106) | Dynamic Compression<br>*3<br>(12) page 106) | Low Frequency Effects<br>*4<br>(12) page 106) |  |
| DIRECT/PURE DIRECT (2channel)*1      | 0              |            |                 |                   |                     | ⊚*5       |                                    | 0   | 0   |   |  |
| DIRECT/PURE DIRECT (Multi-channel)*1 | 0              | 0          | 0               | ⊚*6               | ⊚*6                 | 0         |                                    | 0   | 0   | 0   |  |
| STEREO                               | 0              |            |                 |                   |                     | O         |                                    | 0   | 0   | 0   |  |
| MULTI CH IN                          | 0              | 0          | 0               | O                 | ⊚*7                 | O         | ○*8                                |   |   | 0   |  |
| DOLBY PRO LOGIC IIz                  | 0              | 0          | O               |                   | $\bigcirc$          | O         | 0                                  | 0   | 0   |   |  |
| DOLBY PRO LOGIC IIx                  | 0              | 0          | 0               | O                 |                     | O         | <b>*</b> 9                         | 0   | 0   |   |  |
| DOLBY PRO LOGIC II                   | 0              | 0          | O               |                   |                     | O         | ○*10                               | 0   | 0   |   |  |
| DOLBY PRO LOGIC                      | 0              | 0          | O               |                   |                     | O         | 0                                  | 0   | 0   |   |  |
| DTS NEO:6                            | 0              | 0          | O               | O                 |                     | O         | ○*7                                | 0   | 0   |   |  |
| DOLBY DIGITAL                        | 0              | 0          | 0               | O                 | ⊚*7                 | O         | ○*8                                |   |   | 0   |  |
| DOLBY DIGITAL Plus                   | 0              | 0          | O               | O                 | ©*7                 | 0         | ○*8                                |   |   | 0   |  |
| DOLBY TrueHD                         | 0              | $\odot$    | 0               | 0                 | ©*7                 | 0         | ○*8                                | 0   | 0   | 0   |  |
| DTS SURROUND                         | 0              | 0          | 0               | O                 | ⊚*7                 | 0         | ○*8                                |   |   | 0   |  |
| DTS 96/24                            | 0              | 0          | 0               | 0                 | ©*7                 | 0         | ○*8                                |   |   | 0   |  |
| DTS-HD                               | 0              | 0          | 0               | O                 | ©*7                 | 0         | ○*8                                |   |   | 0   |  |
| DTS Express                          | 0              | 0          | 0               | 0                 | ◎*7                 | 0         | ○*8                                |   |   | 0   |  |
| MULTI CH STEREO                      | 0              | $\bigcirc$ | 0               | O                 | O                   | 0         |                                    | 0   | 0   | 0   |  |
| VIRTUAL                              | 0              |            |                 |                   |                     | O         |                                    | 0   | 0   | 0   |  |

\*1 During playback in PURE DIRECT mode, the surround parameters are the same as in DIRECT mode.

\*2 This item can be selected when a Dolby TrueHD signal is played.

\*3 This item can be selected when a Dolby Digital or DTS signal is played.

\*4 This item can be selected when a Dolby Digital or DTS signal or DVD-Audio is played.

\*5 Only when "Subwoofer Mode" is set to "LFE+Main" (@page 122), sound is output from the subwoofer.

**\***6 A signal for each channel contained in an input signal is output as audio.

\*7 Audio is output from the front height speaker when the set sound mode name contains "+PLIIz". For information on how to check the sound mode, see page 71.

\*8 This setting is unavailable when the set sound mode name contains "+PLIIx Music". For information on how to check the sound mode, see page 71.

\*9 This setting is possible when the sound mode is "PLIIx Movie" or "DTS NEO:6 Cinema".

\*10 This setting is possible when the sound mode is "PLII Movie".

#### Surround

|                                      |                                    | Surround Paramet          |                                      |                                |                      |                     | Au                                      | dyssey *12 (🖝 page 11                  | )9)  |                             |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|---|--|--|-----------------------------|
| Council Marcha (2000 and 24)         | PRO                                | LOGIC II/IIx Music mode   | only                                 | NEO:6 Music mode only          | Subwoofer            | Tone                |   |  |  | M-DAX                       |
| Sound Mode (1777 page 71)            | Panorama<br>(IMP <u>page 106</u> ) | Dimension<br>(🖙 page 106) | Center Width<br>(© <u>Page 107</u> ) | Center Image<br>(ICP page 106) | (🔊 <u>page 107</u> ) | *11<br>(© page 107) | MultEQ <sup>®</sup> XT<br>(IZ page 109) | Dynamic EQ<br>*13 (© <u>Page 109</u> ) | Dynamic Volume<br>*13<br>(M <u>Ppage 110</u> ) | *14<br>(🖙 <u>page 108</u> ) |
| DIRECT/PURE DIRECT (2channel)*1      |                                    |                           |                                      |                                | ⊖*5                  |                     |   |  |  |                             |
| DIRECT/PURE DIRECT (Multi-channel)*1 |                                    |                           |                                      |                                | 0                    |                     |   |  |  |                             |
| STEREO                               |                                    |                           |                                      |                                |                      | 0                   | 0                                       | 0                                      | 0  | 0                           |
| MULTI CH IN                          |                                    |                           |                                      |                                | 0                    | 0                   | 0                                       | 0                                      | 0  |                             |
| DOLBY PRO LOGIC IIz                  |                                    |                           |                                      |                                | 0                    | 0                   | 0                                       | 0                                      | 0  | 0                           |
| DOLBY PRO LOGIC IIx                  | 0                                  | 0                         | 0                                    |                                | 0                    | 0                   | 0                                       | 0                                      | 0  | 0                           |
| DOLBY PRO LOGIC II                   | 0                                  | 0                         | 0                                    |                                | 0                    | 0                   | 0                                       | 0                                      | 0  | 0                           |
| DOLBY PRO LOGIC                      | 0                                  | 0                         | 0                                    |                                | 0                    | 0                   | 0                                       | 0                                      | 0  | 0                           |
| DTS NE0:6                            |                                    |                           |                                      | 0                              | 0                    | 0                   | 0                                       | 0                                      | 0  | 0                           |
| DOLBY DIGITAL                        |                                    |                           |                                      |                                | 0                    | 0                   | 0                                       | 0                                      | 0  |                             |
| DOLBY DIGITAL Plus                   |                                    |                           |                                      |                                | 0                    | 0                   | 0                                       | 0                                      | 0  |                             |
| DOLBY TrueHD                         |                                    |                           |                                      |                                | 0                    | 0                   | 0                                       | 0                                      | 0  |                             |
| DTS SURROUND                         |                                    |                           |                                      |                                | 0                    | 0                   | 0                                       | 0                                      | 0  |                             |
| DTS 96/24                            |                                    |                           |                                      |                                | 0                    | 0                   | 0                                       | 0                                      | 0  |                             |
| DTS-HD                               |                                    |                           |                                      |                                | 0                    | 0                   | 0                                       | 0                                      | 0  |                             |
| DTS Express                          |                                    |                           |                                      |                                | 0                    | 0                   | 0                                       | 0                                      | 0  |                             |
| MULTI CH STEREO                      |                                    |                           |                                      |                                | 0                    | 0                   | 0                                       | 0                                      | 0  | 0                           |
| VIRTUAL                              |                                    |                           |                                      |                                | 0                    | 0                   | 0                                       | 0                                      | 0  | 0                           |

\*1 During playback in PURE DIRECT mode, the surround parameters are the same as in DIRECT mode.

\*5 Only when "Subwoofer Mode" is set to "LFE+Main" (127 page 122), sound is output from the subwoofer.

\*11 This item cannot be set when "Dynamic EQ" (page 109) is set to "On".

\*12 For HD Audio whose sampling frequency of an input signal is more than 96 kHz, this sound parameter cannot be set.

\*12 For HD Addie Whose sampling nequency of an input signal is have than oc k12, kins sound parts and the set when "MultEQ® XT" (*page 109*) is set to "Off" or "Graphic EQ".
 \*14 This item can be set when the input signal is analog, PCM 48 kHz or 44.1 kHz.

## **U** Types of input signals, and corresponding sound modes

This table shows the input signal that can be played in each sound mode. Check the audio signal of the input source then select the sound mode.

## Symbols in the table

• This indicates the default sound mode.

 $\bigcirc$  This indicates the selectable sound mode.

|                                  |      |        | Input signal types and formats |              |                        |                                    |                |                                |                               |                |           |                 |                       |                                    |                                       |                             |                           |
|----------------------------------|------|--------|--------------------------------|--------------|------------------------|------------------------------------|----------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------|-----------|-----------------|-----------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
|                                  |      |        | PC                             | CM           | DTS                    | S-HD                               |                |                                | DTS                           |                |           | DC              | )LBY                  |                                    | DOLBY D                               | GITAL                       |                           |
| Sound Mode (🎓 page 71)           | NOTE | ANALOG | PCM<br>(multi ch)              | PCM<br>(2ch) | DTS-HD<br>Master Audio | DTS-HD High<br>Resolution<br>Audio | DTS<br>EXPRESS | DTS ES<br>DSCRT<br>(With Flag) | DTS ES<br>MTRX<br>(With Flag) | DTS<br>(5.1ch) | DTS 96/24 | DOLBY<br>TrueHD | DOLBY<br>DIGITAL Plus | DOLBY<br>DIGITAL EX<br>(With Flag) | DOLBY DIGITAL<br>EX<br>(With no Flag) | DOLBY<br>DIGITAL<br>(5.1ch) | DOLBY<br>DIGITAL<br>(2ch) |
| DTS SURROUND                     |      |        |                                |              |                        |                                    |                |                                |                               |                |           |                 |                       |                                    |                                       |                             |                           |
| DTS-HD MSTR                      |      |        |                                |              | •                      |                                    |                |                                |                               |                |           |                 |                       |                                    |                                       |                             |                           |
| DTS-HD HI RES                    |      |        |                                |              |                        | •                                  |                |                                |                               |                |           |                 |                       |                                    |                                       |                             |                           |
| DTS ES DSCRT6.1                  | *1*2 |        |                                |              |                        |                                    |                | •                              |                               |                |           |                 |                       |                                    |                                       |                             |                           |
| DTS ES MTRX6.1                   | *1*2 |        |                                |              |                        |                                    |                |                                | •                             |                |           |                 |                       |                                    |                                       |                             |                           |
| DTS SURROUND                     |      |        |                                |              |                        |                                    |                | 0                              | 0                             |                |           |                 |                       |                                    |                                       |                             |                           |
| DTS 96/24                        |      |        |                                |              |                        |                                    |                |                                |                               |                | •         |                 |                       |                                    |                                       |                             |                           |
| DTS (-HD) + PLIIx MOVIE          | *1*3 |        |                                |              | 0                      | 0                                  | 0              |                                |                               | 0              | 0         |                 |                       |                                    |                                       |                             |                           |
| DTS (-HD) + PLIIx MUSIC          | *1*2 |        |                                |              | 0                      | 0                                  | 0              |                                |                               | 0              | 0         |                 |                       |                                    |                                       |                             |                           |
| DTS (–HD) + PLIIz                | *4*5 |        |                                |              | 0                      | 0                                  | 0              | 0                              | 0                             | 0              | 0         |                 |                       |                                    |                                       |                             |                           |
| DTS EXPRESS                      |      |        |                                |              |                        |                                    | •              |                                |                               |                |           |                 |                       |                                    |                                       |                             |                           |
| DTS (-HD) + NEO:6                | *1*2 |        |                                |              | 0                      | 0                                  | 0              |                                |                               | 0              | 0         |                 |                       |                                    |                                       |                             |                           |
| DTS NEO:6 CINEMA                 |      | 0      |                                | 0            |                        |                                    |                |                                |                               |                |           |                 |                       |                                    |                                       |                             | 0                         |
| DTS NEO:6 MUSIC                  |      | 0      |                                | 0            |                        |                                    |                |                                |                               |                |           |                 |                       |                                    |                                       |                             | 0                         |
| DOLBY SURROUND                   | 1    |        |                                |              |                        |                                    |                |                                |                               |                |           |                 |                       |                                    |                                       |                             |                           |
| DOLBY TrueHD                     | ]    |        |                                |              |                        |                                    |                |                                |                               |                |           | •               |                       |                                    |                                       |                             |                           |
| DOLBY DIGITAL+                   |      |        |                                |              |                        |                                    |                |                                |                               |                |           |                 | •                     |                                    |                                       |                             |                           |
| DOLBY DIGITAL EX                 | *1*2 |        |                                |              |                        |                                    |                |                                |                               |                |           |                 |                       | 0                                  | 0                                     | 0                           |                           |
| DOLBY (D+) (HD) +EX              | *1*2 |        |                                |              |                        |                                    |                |                                |                               |                |           | 0               | 0                     |                                    |                                       |                             |                           |
| DOLBY DIGITAL                    |      |        |                                |              |                        |                                    |                |                                |                               |                |           |                 |                       | 0                                  | •                                     | ۲                           |                           |
| DOLBY (D) (D+) (HD) +PLIIx MOVIE | *1*3 |        |                                |              |                        |                                    |                |                                |                               |                |           | 0               | 0                     | •                                  | 0                                     | 0                           |                           |
| DOLBY (D) (D+) (HD) +PLIIx MUSIC | *1*2 |        |                                |              |                        |                                    |                |                                |                               |                |           | 0               | 0                     | 0                                  | 0                                     | 0                           |                           |
| DOLBY (D) (D+) (HD) +PLIIz       | *4   |        |                                |              |                        |                                    |                |                                |                               |                |           | 0               | 0                     | 0                                  | 0                                     | 0                           |                           |
| DOLBY PRO LOGIC IIx MOVIE        | *1*2 | 0      |                                | 0            |                        |                                    |                |                                |                               |                |           |                 |                       |                                    |                                       |                             | 0                         |
| DOLBY PRO LOGIC IIx MUSIC        | *1*2 | 0      |                                | 0            |                        |                                    |                |                                |                               |                |           |                 |                       |                                    |                                       |                             | 0                         |
| DOLBY PRO LOGIC IIx GAME         | *1*2 | 0      |                                | 0            |                        |                                    |                |                                |                               |                |           |                 |                       |                                    |                                       |                             | 0                         |
| DOLBY PRO LOGIC IIz              | *4*5 | 0      |                                | 0            |                        |                                    |                |                                |                               |                |           |                 |                       |                                    |                                       |                             | 0                         |
| DOLBY PRO LOGIC II MOVIE         |      | 0      |                                | 0            |                        |                                    |                |                                |                               |                |           |                 |                       |                                    |                                       |                             | 0                         |
| DOLBY PRO LOGIC II MUSIC         |      | 0      |                                | 0            |                        |                                    |                |                                |                               |                |           |                 |                       |                                    |                                       |                             | 0                         |
| DOLBY PRO LOGIC II GAME          |      | 0      |                                | 0            |                        |                                    |                |                                |                               |                |           |                 |                       |                                    |                                       |                             | 0                         |
| DOLBY PRO LOGIC                  |      | 0      |                                | 0            |                        |                                    |                |                                |                               |                |           |                 |                       |                                    |                                       |                             | 0                         |

\*1 This sound mode can be selected when "Assign Mode" (mp page 121) is set to "Surround Back".

\*2 If "Speaker Config." - "Surr. Back" (@page 121) is set to "None", this sound mode cannot be selected.

\*3 If "Speaker Config." - "Surr. Back" (17 page 121) is set to "1spkr" or "None", this sound mode cannot be selected.

\*4 If "Speaker Config." – "Front Height" (17 page 122) is set to "None", this sound mode cannot be selected.

\*5 This sound mode can be selected when "Assign Mode" (@page 121) is set to "Front Height".

|                           |      |             | Input signal types and formats |              |                        |                                    |                |                                |                               |                |           |                 |                       |                                    |  |                             |                           |
|---------------------------|------|-------------|--------------------------------|--------------|------------------------|------------------------------------|----------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------|-----------|-----------------|-----------------------|------------------------------------|--|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| Sound Mode (🎓 page 71)    |      | NOTE ANALOG | PC                             | M            | DTS                    | -HD                                |                |                                | DTS                           |                |           | DC              | ILBY                  |                                    | DOLBY                                    | DIGITAL                     |                           |
|                           | NOTE |             | PCM<br>(multi ch)              | PCM<br>(2ch) | DTS-HD<br>Master Audio | DTS-HD High<br>Resolution<br>Audio | DTS<br>EXPRESS | DTS ES<br>DSCRT<br>(With Flag) | DTS ES<br>MTRX<br>(With Flag) | DTS<br>(5.1ch) | DTS 96/24 | DOLBY<br>TrueHD | DOLBY<br>DIGITAL Plus | DOLBY<br>DIGITAL EX<br>(With Flag) | DOLBY<br>DIGITAL EX<br>(With no<br>Flag) | DOLBY<br>DIGITAL<br>(5.1ch) | DOLBY<br>DIGITAL<br>(2ch) |
| MULTI CH IN               |      |             |                                |              |                        |                                    |                |                                |                               |                |           |                 |                       |                                    |  |                             |                           |
| MULTI CH IN               |      |             |                                |              |                        |                                    |                |                                |                               |                |           |                 |                       |                                    |  |                             |                           |
| MULTI CH IN + PLIIx MOVIE | *1*3 |             | 0                              |              |                        |                                    |                |                                |                               |                |           |                 |                       |                                    |  |                             |                           |
| MULTI CH IN + PLIIx MUSIC | *1*2 |             | 0                              |              |                        |                                    |                |                                |                               |                |           |                 |                       |                                    |  |                             |                           |
| MULTI CH IN + PLIIz       | *4*5 |             | 0                              |              |                        |                                    |                |                                |                               |                |           |                 |                       |                                    |  |                             |                           |
| MULTI CH IN + Dolby EX    | *1*2 |             | 0                              |              |                        |                                    |                |                                |                               |                |           |                 |                       |                                    |  |                             |                           |
| MULTI CH IN 7.1           | *1*2 |             | • (7.1)                        |              |                        |                                    |                |                                |                               |                |           |                 |                       |                                    |  |                             |                           |
| DIRECT                    |      |             |                                |              |                        |                                    |                |                                |                               |                |           |                 |                       |                                    |  |                             |                           |
| DIRECT                    |      | 0           | 0                              | 0            | 0                      | 0                                  | 0              | 0                              | 0                             | 0              | 0         | 0               | 0                     | 0                                  | 0  | 0                           | 0                         |
| PURE DIRECT               |      |             |                                |              |                        |                                    |                |                                |                               |                |           |                 |                       |                                    |  |                             |                           |
| PURE DIRECT               |      | 0           | 0                              | 0            | 0                      | 0                                  | 0              | 0                              | 0                             | 0              | 0         | 0               | 0                     | 0                                  | 0  | 0                           | 0                         |
| DSP SIMULATION            |      |             |                                |              |                        |                                    |                |                                |                               |                |           |                 |                       |                                    |  |                             |                           |
| MULTI CH STEREO           |      | 0           | 0                              | 0            | 0                      | 0                                  | 0              | 0                              | 0                             | 0              | 0         | 0               | 0                     | 0                                  | 0  | 0                           | 0                         |
| VIRTUAL                   |      | 0           | 0                              | 0            | 0                      | 0                                  | 0              | 0                              | 0                             | 0              | 0         | 0               | 0                     | 0                                  | 0  | 0                           | 0                         |
| STEREO                    |      |             |                                |              |                        |                                    |                |                                |                               |                |           |                 |                       |                                    |  |                             |                           |
| STEREO                    |      |             | 0                              | •            | 0                      | 0                                  | 0              | 0                              | 0                             | 0              | 0         | 0               | 0                     | 0                                  | 0  | 0                           | 0                         |

\*1 This sound mode can be selected when "Assign Mode" (mp page 121) is set to "Surround Back".

\*2 If "Speaker Config." - "Surr. Back" (12 page 121) is set to "None", this sound mode cannot be selected.

\*3 If "Speaker Config." – "Surr. Back" (17 page 121) is set to "1spkr" or "None", this sound mode cannot be selected.

\*4 If "Speaker Config." – "Front Height" (17 page 122) is set to "None", this sound mode cannot be selected.

\*5 This sound mode can be selected when "Assign Mode" (127 page 121) is set to "Front Height".

## Relationship between video signals and monitor output

| MAIN ZONE MONITOR OUT |      |                 |       |                   |                           |                   |                            |                      |           |  |  |
|-----------------------|------|-----------------|-------|-------------------|---------------------------|-------------------|----------------------------|----------------------|-----------|--|--|
| Video Conversion      |      | Input connector |       |                   | Output connector          |                   |                            | Menu displayed       |           |  |  |
| video conversion      | HDMI | COMPONENT       | VIDEO | HDMI              | COMPONENT                 | VIDEO             | HDMI                       | COMPONENT            | VIDEO     |  |  |
| On                    | ×    | ×               | ×     | ×                 | - × -                     | ×                 | Only the menu is displayed | ×                    | ×         |  |  |
| On                    | ×    | ×               | 0     | ⊖ <video></video> |                           | ⊖ <vide0></vide0> | O (VIDEO)                  | ^                    | O (VIDEO) |  |  |
| On                    | ×    | 0               | ×     |                   |                           | ×                 |                            |                      | ×         |  |  |
| On                    | ×    | 0               | 0     | COMPONENT>        | ○ <component></component> | ○ <vide0></vide0> | C (COMPONENT)              | $\times$ (COMPONENT) | O (VIDEO) |  |  |
| On                    | 0    | ×               | ×     |                   | ×                         | ×                 |                            |                      | ×         |  |  |
| On                    | 0    | ×               | 0     |                   | ○ <hdmi></hdmi>           | ○ <vide0></vide0> |                            | ×                    | (VIDEO)   |  |  |
| On                    | 0    | 0               | ×     |                   | O <component></component> | ×                 |                            |                      | ×         |  |  |
| On                    | 0    | 0               | 0     | 1                 |                           | ○ <vide0></vide0> |                            | imes (component)     | (VIDEO)   |  |  |
| Off                   | ×    | ×               | ×     |                   |                           | ×                 |                            | ×                    | ×         |  |  |
| Off                   | ×    | ×               | 0     | ] ×               | ×                         | ⊖ <vide0></vide0> |                            | × [                  | (VIDEO)   |  |  |
| Off                   | ×    | 0               | ×     | 1 ^               |                           | ×                 |                            |                      | ×         |  |  |
| Off                   | ×    | 0               | 0     |                   | ○ <component></component> | ⊖ <vide0></vide0> |                            | × (COMPONENT)        | (VIDEO)   |  |  |
| Off                   | 0    | ×               | ×     |                   | ~                         | ×                 | Only the menu is displayed |                      | ×         |  |  |
| Off                   | 0    | ×               | 0     |                   | ×                         | ⊖ <vide0></vide0> |                            | ×                    | (VIDEO)   |  |  |
| Off                   | 0    | 0               | ×     | −                 |                           | ×                 |                            |                      | ×         |  |  |
| Off                   | 0    | 0               | 0     | 1                 | ○ <component></component> | ⊖ <vide0></vide0> |                            | × (COMPONENT)        | (VIDEO)   |  |  |

Video signal input pres
 X : No video signal input

 $\bigcirc$  <> : The input signal between the < > marks is output. × : No video signal output

 $\bigcirc$  () : Superimposed on the picture indication  $\times$  () : Only the picture in () is output.

imes : Neither the picture nor the menu is output.

## ø

The main zone video conversion function is compatible with the following formats: NTSC, PAL, SECAM, NTSC4.43, PAL-N, PAL-M and PAL-60.

#### NOTE

• The status display screen cannot be displayed at a computer's resolution (e.g. VGA) or while certain 3D video contents is being played.

• When the menu is operated on a computer's resolution (e.g. VGA) or during playback of certain 3D video content, the playback image switches to the menu screen image.

## Video signal resolution conversion table

When "Video Conversion" (1) is set to "On", "i/p Scaler" (1) is set to "Analog", "Analog", "Analog", "Analog & HDMI" or "HDMI" are set, the resolution of the input video signal can be converted to a different resolution for output (1) is set to "Converting input video signals for output (Video conversion function)").

The relationship between the resolution of the convertible video signal and HDMI output resolution is shown in the table below.

|                       |                                    |                      |           |       | HDMI Output |       |            |              |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------|----------------------|-----------|-------|-------------|-------|------------|--------------|
|                       | Output resolution Input resolution | <b>480i/576i *</b> 1 | 480p/576p | 1080i | 720p        | 1080p | 1080p 24Hz | <b>4K</b> *2 |
| Video input           | 480i/576i                          | 0                    | 0         | 0     | 0           | 0     | 0          | 0            |
|                       | 480i/576i                          | 0                    | 0         | 0     | 0           | 0     | 0          | 0            |
|                       | 480p/576p                          | -                    | 0         | 0     | 0           | 0     | 0          | 0            |
| Component video input | 1080i                              | -                    | -         | 0     | 0           | 0     | 0          | 0            |
|                       | 720p                               | -                    | -         | 0     | 0           | 0     | 0          | 0            |
|                       | 1080p                              | -                    | -         | -     | -           | 0     | 0          | 0            |
|                       | 480i/576i                          | 0                    | 0         | 0     | 0           | 0     | 0          | 0            |
|                       | 480p/576p                          | -                    | 0         | 0     | 0           | 0     | 0          | 0            |
|                       | 1080i                              | -                    | -         | 0     | 0           | 0     | 0          | 0            |
| HDMI input            | 720p                               | -                    | -         | 0     | 0           | 0     | 0          | 0            |
|                       | 1080p 24Hz                         | -                    | -         | -     | -           | ○*3   | ○*4        | 0            |
|                       | 1080p                              | -                    | -         | -     | -           | 0     | 0          | 0            |
|                       | 4K                                 | -                    | -         | -     | -           | -     | -          | ○*5          |

O The resolution set in "Resolution" (@page 114) in the menu is output.

- Output at the same resolution as the input video signal resolution.

\*1 Only output when "i/p Scaler" in the menu is set to "Off".

\*2 Output at a resolution of 3840 x 2160 (24/25/30Hz).

\*3 The resolution set in "Resolution" (rpage 114) in the menu is set to "Auto", and a television that does not support 1080p 24Hz video signals is connected.

\*4 The resolution set in "Resolution" (1) page 114) in the menu is set to "Auto", and a television that supports 1080p 24Hz video signals is connected.

\*5 Output at the same resolution as the input video signal resolution.

## NOTE

• Video output is output at the same resolution as the input video signal resolution.

• The 4K, 3D, Computer resolution, "x.v.Color", sYCC601 color, Adobe RGB color or Adobe YCC601 color input to HDMI is output at the same resolution as the input video signal.

• When "Video Mode" in the menu is set to "Game" or "Auto" and game contents are played, the same resolution as the input video signal is output.

• When "Resolution" in the menu is set to "Auto", the number of pixels in the television panel connected to the HDMI output connector is automatically detected, and the optimum resolution is output according to the table above.

• If 1080p 24Hz signals input from the HDMI terminal are converted into 1080p 60Hz/1080p 50Hz for output, they are output according to the specified "Format" (15) setting in the menu: "NTSC" – Output as 1080p 60Hz.

"PAL" – Output as 1080p 50Hz.

• You can not convert 60Hz into 50Hz or vice versa.

• You can not convert 50Hz into 24Hz.

## **Explanation of terms**

Α

#### A2DP

A2DP is one profile of Bluetooth definded for in-car devices or AV devices that use wireless communication instead of a cable

#### Adobe RGB color, Adobe YCC601 color

The color space defined by Adobe Systems Inc. Because it is a wider color space than RGB, it can produce more vivid and natural images.

#### AirPlav

AirPlay sends (plays) contents recorded in iTunes or on an iPhone/iPod touch/iPad to a compatible device via the network.

#### App Store

App Store is a site that sells application software for such devices as the iPhone or iPod Touch, and is operated by Apple Inc.

#### Audyssey Dynamic EQ®

Dynamic EQ solves the problem of deteriorating sound quality as volume is decreased by taking into account human perception and room acoustics. Audyssey Dynamic EQ<sup>®</sup> works in tandem with Audyssev MultEQ<sup>®</sup> XT to provide well-balanced sound for every listener at any volume level.

#### Audvssev Dvnamic Volume<sup>®</sup>

Dynamic Volume solves the problem of large variations in volume level between television programs, commercials, and between the soft and loud passages of movies. Audyssev Dynamic EQ<sup>®</sup> is integrated into Dynamic Volume so that as the plavback volume is adjusted automatically, the perceived bass response, tonal balance, surround impression, and dialog clarity remain the same.

#### Audyssey MultEQ<sup>®</sup> XT

MultEQ<sup>®</sup> XT is a room equalization solution that calibrates any audio system so that it can achieve optimum performance for every listener in a large listening area. Based on several room measurements, MultEQ® XT calculates an equalization solution that corrects for both time and frequency response problems in the listening area and also performs a fully automated surround system setup.

#### Auto Lip Sync

If you connect the unit to a TV that supports the Auto Lip Sync function, it can automatically correct delay between the audio and video.

#### Bluetooth

В

D

Bluetooth a short-distance is wireless communication technology used for connecting handheld devices several meters apart. This enables notebook computers, PDA s, mobile phones, etc. to connect without a cable for transmitting audio and data.

#### Deep Color

An imaging technology supported by HDMI. Unlike RGB, which uses 8 bits (256 shades) per color, it can use 10 bits (1024 shades), 12 bits (4096 shades), or 16 bits (65536 shades) to produce colors in higher definition.

Both devices linked via HDMI must support Deep Color.

#### DLNA

DLNA and DLNA CERTIFIED are trademarks and/ or service marks of Digital Living Network Alliance. Some contents may not be compatible with other DLNA CERTIFIED<sup>®</sup> products.

#### **Dolby Digital**

Dolby Digital is a multi-channel digital signal format developed by Dolby Laboratories.

A total of 5.1 channels are played: 3 front channels ("FL", "FR" and "C"), 2 surround channels ("SL" and "SR") and the "LFE" channel for low frequencies.

Because of this, there is no crosstalk between channels and a realistic sound field with a "threedimensional" feeling (sense of distance, movement and positioning) is achieved.

A realistic, powerful sense of presence is achieved when playing movie sources in AV rooms as well. **Dolby Digital EX** 

Dolby Digital EX is a 6.1-channel surround format proposed by Dolby Laboratories that allows users to enjoy in their homes the "DOLBY DIGITAL SURROUND EX" audio format jointly developed by Dolby Laboratories and Lucas Films.

The 6.1 channels of sound, including surround back channels, provide improved sound positioning and expression of space.

#### **Dolby Digital Plus**

Dolby Digital Plus is an improved Dolby Digital signal format that is compatible with up to 7.1 channels of discrete digital sound and also improves sound quality thanks to extra data bit rate performance. It is upwardly compatible with conventional Dolby Digital. so it offers greater flexibility in response to the source signal and the conditions of the playback device.

#### **Dolby Pro Logic** II

Dolby Pro Logic II is a matrix decoding technology developed by Dolby Laboratories.

Regular music such as that on CDs is encoded into 5 channels to achieve an excellent surround effect. The surround channel signals are converted into stereo and full band signals (with a frequency response of 20 Hz to 20 kHz or greater) to create a "three-dimensional" sound image offering a rich sense of presence for all stereo sources.

#### **Dolby Pro Logic** IIx

Dolby Pro Logic IIx is a further improved version of the Dolby Pro Logic II matrix decoding technology. Audio signals recorded in 2 channels are decoded to achieve a natural sound with up to 7.1 channels. There are three modes: "Music" suited for playing music, "Movie" suited for playing movies, and "Game" which is optimized for playing games.

#### **Dolby Pro Logic** IIz

Dolby Pro Logic IIz introduces a new dimension to Home Entertainment through the addition of a pair of front height channels. Compatible with stereo, 5.1-channel and 7.1-channel content, Dolby Pro Logic IIz provides enhanced spaciousness, depth and dimension to movies, concert video and video game playback while maintaining the full integrity of the source mix.

Dolby Pro Logic IIz identifies and decodes spatial cues that occur naturally in all content, directing this information to the front height channels. complementing the performance of left and right surround sound speakers. Content that is encoded with Dolby Pro Logic IIz height channel information can be even more revealing, with perceptually discrete height channel information bringing an exciting new dimension to home entertainment.

Dolby Pro Logic IIz, with front height channels is also an ideal alternative for households that cannot support the placement of back surround speakers of a typical 7.1-channel system but may have bookshelf space available to support the addition of height speakers.

#### **Dolby TrueHD**

Dolby TrueHD is a high definition audio technology developed by Dolby Laboratories, using lossless coding technology to faithfully reproduce the sound of the studio master.

This format provides the facility to support up to 8 audio channels with a sampling frequency of 96 kHz/24 bit resolution and up to 6 audio channels with a sampling frequency of 192 kHz/24 bit resolution. Dolby TrueHD is adopted for applications that put very high importance on sound quality.

#### Downmix

This function converts the number of channels of surround audio to less number of channels and plays back.

#### DTS

This is an abbreviation of Digital Theater System, which is a digital audio system developed by DTS. When playing back audio by connecting this system with a device such as DTS amplifier, accurate sound field position and realistic sound effect as if you are in a movie theater can be obtained.

#### DTS 96/24

DTS 96/24 is a digital audio format enabling high sound quality playback in 5.1 channels with a sampling frequency of 96 kHz and 24 bit quantization on DVD-Video.

#### **DTS Digital Surround**

DTS Digital Surround is the standard digital surround format of DTS, Inc., compatible with a sampling frequency of 44.1 or 48 kHz and up to 5.1 channels of digital discrete surround sound.

#### DTS-ES<sup>™</sup> Discrete 6.1

DTS-ES<sup>™</sup> Discrete 6.1 is a 6.1-channel discrete digital audio format adding a surround back (SB) channel to the DTS digital surround sound.

Decoding of conventional 5.1-channel audio signals is also possible according to the decoder.

#### DTS-ES<sup>™</sup> Matrix 6.1

DTS-ES<sup>™</sup> Matrix 6.1 is a 6.1-channel discrete digital audio format inserting a surround back (SB) channel to the DTS digital surround sound through matrix encoding. Decoding of conventional 5.1-channel audio signals is also possible according to the decoder.

#### **DTS Express**

DTS Express is an audio format supporting low bit rates (max. 5.1 channels, 24 to 256 kbps).

#### DTS-HD

This audio technology provides higher sound quality and enhanced functionality than the conventional DTS and is adopted as an optional audio for Blu-ray Disc. This technology supports multi-channel, high data transfer speed, high sampling frequency, and lossless audio playback. Maximum 7.1-channels are supported in Blu-ray Disc.

#### DTS-HD High Resolution Audio

DTS-HD High Resolution Audio is an improved version of the conventional DTS, DTS-ES and DTS 96/24 signals formats, compatible with sampling frequencies of 96 or 48 kHz and up to 7.1 channels of discrete digital sound. High data bit rate performance provides high quality sound. This format is fully compatible with conventional products, including conventional DTS digital surround 5.1-channel data.

#### **DTS-HD Master Audio**

DTS-HD Master Audio is a lossless audio format created by Digital Theater System (DTS). This format provides the facility to support up to 8 audio channels with a sampling frequency of 96 kHz/ 24 bit resolution and up to 6 audio channels with a sampling frequency of 192 kHz/24 bit resolution. It is fully compatible with conventional products, including conventional DTS digital surround 5.1-channel data.

#### DTS NEO:6<sup>™</sup> Surround

DTS NEO:6<sup>™</sup> is a matrix decoding technology for achieving 6.1-channel surround playback with 2-channel sources. It includes "DTS NEO:6 Cinema" suited for playing movies and "DTS NEO:6 Music" suited for playing music.

#### Dynamic range

The difference between the maximum undistorted sound level and the minimum discernible level above the noise emitted by the device.

#### FLAC

FLAC stands for Free lossless Audio Codec, and is a lossless free audio file format. Lossless means that the audio is compressed without any loss in quality. The FLAC license is as shown below.

F

Copyright (C) 2000,2001,2002,2003,2004,2005,200 6,2007,2008,2009 Josh Coalson

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/ or other materials provided with the distribution.

 Neither the name of the Xiph.org Foundation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission. THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES. INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE FOUNDATION OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT. INDIRECT. INCIDENTAL. SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

#### HDCP

When transmitting digital signals between devices, this copyright protection technology encrypts the signals to prevent content from being copied without authorization.

Н

#### HDMI

This is an abbreviation of High-Definition Multimedia Interface, which is an AV digital interface that can be connected to a TV or amplifier. Video signal and audio signal can be connected using 1 cable.

#### iTunes

iTunes is the name of the multimedia player provided by Apple Inc. It enables management and playback of multimedia contents including music and movies. iTunes supports many main file formats including AAC, WAV, and MP3.

#### LFE

L

This is an abbreviation of Low Frequency Effect, which is an output channel that emphasizes low frequency effect sound. Surround audio is intensified by outputting 20 Hz to 120 Hz deep bass.

#### MAIN ZONE

М

The room where this unit is placed is called the  $\ensuremath{\mathsf{MAIN}}$  ZONE .

#### MP3 (MPEG Audio Layer-3)

This is an internationally standardized audio data compression scheme, using the "MPEG-1" video compression standard. It compresses the data volume to about one eleventh its original size while maintaining sound quality equivalent to a music CD. **MPEG (Moving Picture Experts Group)**,

## MPEG-2, MPEG-4

These are the names for digital compression format standards used for the encoding of video and audio. Video standards include "MPEG-1 Video", "MPEG-2 Video", "MPEG-4 Visual", "MPEG-4 AVC". Audio standards include "MPEG-1 Audio", "MPEG-2 Audio", "MPEG-2 Audio", "MPEG-2 Audio".

#### Pairing

Pairing is an operation required for settings to connect two Bluetooth devices. Pairing enables Bluetooth devices to access each other.

#### Progressive (sequential scanning)

Ρ

This is a scanning system of video signal that displays 1 frame of video as one image. Compared to the interlace system, this system provides images with less flickering and bleeding.

#### **Protection Circuit**

This is a function to prevent damage to devices within the power supply when an abnormality such as an overload, excess voltage occurs or temperature for any reason.

In this unit, the STANDBY indicator blinks and the unit enters standby mode when an abnormality occurs.

#### S Sampling frequency

Sampling involves taking a reading of a sound wave (analog signal) at regular intervals and expressing the height of the wave at each reading in digitized format (producing a digital signal).

The number of readings taken in one second is called the "sampling frequency". The larger the value, the closer the reproduced sound is to the original.

#### Speaker impedance

This is an AC resistance value, indicated in  $\Omega$  (ohms). Greater power can be obtained with this value smaller.

#### sYCC601 color

Like "x.v.Color", each of these color spaces defines a palette of available colors that is larger than the traditional RGB color model.

#### Explanation of terms

#### vTuner

This is a free online content server for Internet radio. Note that usage fees are included in upgrade costs.

For inquiries about this service, visit the vTuner site below.

#### vTuner website: http://www.radiomarantz.com

This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Nothing Else Matters Software and BridgeCo. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Nothing Else Matters Software and BridgeCo or an authorized subsidiary.

## W

#### Windows Media DRM

V

This is a copyright protection technology developed by Microsoft.

Content providers are using the digital rights management technology for Windows Media contained in this device (WM-DRM) to protect the integrity of their content (Secure Content) so that their intellectual property, including copyright, in such content is not misappropriated. This device uses WM-DRM software to play Secure Content (WM-DRM Software). If the security of the WM-DRM Software in this device has been compromised, owners of Secure Content (Secure Content Owners) may request that Microsoft revoke the WM-DRM Software's right to acquire new licenses to copy, display and/or play Secure Content. Revocation does not alter the WM-DRM Software's ability to play unprotected content. A list of revoked WM-DRM Software is sent to your device whenever you download a license for Secure Content from the Internet or from a PC. Microsoft may, in conjunction with such license, also download revocation list onto your device on behalf of Secure Content Owners.

#### Windows Media Player Ver.11 or later

This is a media player distributed free of charge by Microsoft Corporation.

It can play playlists created with Ver.11 or later of Windows Media Player, as well as WMA, DRM WMA, WAV, and other files.

#### WMA (Windows Media Audio)

This is audio compression technology developed by Microsoft Corporation.

WMA data can be encoded using Windows Media<sup>®</sup> Player Ver.7, 7.1, Windows Media<sup>®</sup> Player for Windows<sup>®</sup> XP and Windows Media<sup>®</sup> Player 9 Series.

To encode WMA files, only use applications authorized by Microsoft Corporation. If you use an unauthorized application, the file may not work properly.

#### Х

#### x.v.Color

This function lets HDTVs display colors more accurately. It enables display with natural, vivid colors. "x.v.Color" is trademark of Sony Corporation.

#### Z

#### ZONE2

This unit can operate in a room other than the room where this unit is placed (MAIN ZONE) (ZONE2 playback). The room for ZONE2 playback is called ZONE2

# Troubleshooting

If a problem should arise, first check the following:

1. Are the connections correct?

2. Is the set being operated as described in the owner's manual?

#### 3. Are the other devices operating properly?

If this unit does not operate properly, check the items listed in the table below. Should the problem persist, there may be a malfunction.

In this case, disconnect the power immediately and contact your store of purchase.

#### [General]

| Symptom  | Cause/Solution  | Page            |
|--|---|-----------------|
| Power does not turn on.  | <ul> <li>Check whether the power plug is correctly inserted into the power<br/>outlet.</li> </ul>   | <u>34</u>       |
|  | • The protection circuit is active. Disconnect the power plug from the electric outlet, wait 5 to 10 seconds and then insert it back into the outlet.   | <u>148</u>      |
| Power automatically switches to standby  | <ul> <li>The sleep timer is set. Turn on the power again, or change the<br/>sleep timer settings.</li> </ul>  | <u>92, 99</u>   |
| mode.  | <ul> <li>"Auto Standby" is triggered when there is no operation for a set<br/>amount of time. To disable "Auto Standby", set "Auto Standby"<br/>on the menu to "Off".</li> </ul>  | <u>130</u>      |
| Display is off.  | • Set "Display" on the menu to something other than "Off".  | <u>130</u>      |
| The STANDBY<br>indicator is blinking<br>red in intervals of  | • Due to the temperature rise within this unit, the protection circuit is working. Please turn off power once, and re-apply the power after the temperature has fallen sufficiently.  | -               |
| approximately 2 seconds.   | • Please re-install this unit in a place having good ventilation.   | -               |
| The STANDBY<br>indicator is blinking<br>red in intervals of<br>approximately 0.5<br>seconds.                                   | <ul> <li>Please use speakers which have the specified impedance.</li> <li>The protection circuit has been activated because the speaker cable core wires are touching, a core wire has come loose from the terminal, or a core wire is touching the rear panel of this unit. After unplugging the power cord, take corrective action such as firmly re-twisting the core wire or taking care of the terminal, and then reconnect the wire.</li> </ul> | <u>79</u><br>79 |
| After turning on<br>the power, the<br>STANDBY indicator<br>is blinking red<br>in intervals of<br>approximately 0.5<br>seconds. | • This unit amplifier circuit has failed. Turn off the power and please contact the marantz service adviser.  | -               |
| Set does not operate properly.   | Reset the microprocessor.   | <u>154</u>      |

#### (HDMI)

| Symptom   | Cause/Solution   | Page                                    |
|---|--|---|
| No audio is<br>output with HDMI<br>connection.  | <ul> <li>Check the connection of the HDMI connectors.</li> <li>When outputting HDMI audio from the speakers, set "HDMI Audio Out" on the menu to "AVR".</li> <li>When outputting HDMI audio from a TV, set "HDMI Audio Out"</li> </ul>   | <u>10</u><br><u>112</u><br>112          |
|   | on the menu to "TV".   |   |
| No video is<br>output with HDMI<br>connection.  | <ul> <li>Check the connection of the HDMI connectors.</li> <li>Set the input source to match the connected HDMI connector.</li> <li>Check whether the TV is compatible with copyright protection (HDCP). If connected to a device not compatible with HDCP, video will not be output correctly.</li> </ul> | <u>10</u><br><u>10, 34</u><br><u>11</u> |
| When the following<br>operations are<br>performed on<br>devices compatible<br>with HDMI control,<br>the same operations<br>occur on this unit.<br>• Power ON/OFF<br>• Switching audio<br>output devices<br>• Adjust volume<br>• Switch input source | • Set "HDMI Control" in the menu to "Off".<br>Furthermore, if you do not want to link the power off operation<br>with devices compatible with HDMI control, set "Power Off<br>Control" in the menu to "Off".   | <u>91, 112</u>                          |

#### [Video]

| Symptom             | Cause/Solution  | Page                      |
|---------------------|---|---------------------------|
| No picture appears. | <ul> <li>Check the connection between the video output terminal of this unit and the input terminal of the TV.</li> <li>Match the input settings to the input terminal of the TV connected to this unit.</li> </ul> | <u>9</u> , <u>13</u><br>– |

| [Audio]   |  |  | Symptom  | Cause/Solution   | Page                 |
|---|--|--|--|--|----------------------|
| Symptom   | Cause/Solution   | Page   | No sound is  | Check the subwoofer connections.   | <u>80,81,82,83</u> , |
| Audio is not output.                                      | <ul><li>Check the connections for all devices.</li><li>Check the speaker connections and configurations.</li></ul>   | 9,10,13,14,<br>15,16,17,19,<br>20,21,22,25<br>80,81,82,83,<br>84, 85, 86 | produced from<br>subwoofer.  | <ul> <li>Turn on the subwoofer's power.</li> <li>Set "Speaker Config." – "Subwoofer" on the menu to "Yes".</li> <li>If "Front" and "Center" for "Speaker Config." are set to "Large", and "Subwoofer Mode" is set to "LFE", no sound may be output from the subwoofers, depending on the input signal or selected sound mode.</li> </ul> |                      |
|   | <ul><li>Check whether the audio device power is turned on.</li><li>Adjust the master volume.</li></ul>   | _<br><u>35</u> , <u>98</u>   | DTS sound is not output.   | • Set "Decode Mode" on the menu to "Auto" or "DTS".  | <u>119</u>           |
|   | <ul> <li>Cancel the mute mode.</li> <li>Check the connection with the playback device and select the proper input source.</li> <li>Match the input mode and the terminal assigned to be the digital input terminal.</li> </ul>   | <u>35, 98</u><br><u>34</u> , <u>98</u><br><u>119</u>                     | Dolby TrueHD, DTS-<br>HD, Dolby Digital<br>Plus audio is not<br>output.                                | • Make HDMI connections.   | <u>10</u>            |
|   | <ul> <li>Disconnect the headphones. No sound is output from the speakers when headphones are connected.</li> </ul>   | <u>135</u>   | Dolby PLII mode or<br>DTS NEO:6 mode   | <ul> <li>Check that "Speaker Config." – "Center" or "Surround" is set to<br/>other than "None". If the speaker system is 2.0/2.1ch, this sound<br/>mode cannot be selected.</li> </ul>   |                      |
| The volume does not increase.                             | <ul> <li>The maximum volume is set too low. Set the maximum volume using "Limit" on the menu.</li> <li>Power for external devices connected to the output connectors</li> </ul>  | <u>108</u>   | cannot be selected.  | <ul> <li>When headphones are used, Dolby PLII or DTS NEO:6 cannot be selected.</li> </ul>  | -                    |
|   | of the unit may not be turned on. Check the power of connected<br>external devices.  | _  | Audyssey MultEQ <sup>®</sup><br>XT, Audyssey   | • Switch the sound mode to other than "DIRECT" or "PURE DIRECT".   |                      |
| No sound is<br>produced from<br>surround speaker.         | • Check if the surround speakers are connected to the SURROUND terminals.  | -  | Dynamic EQ <sup>®</sup> and<br>Audyssey Dynamic<br>Volume <sup>®</sup> cannot be<br>selected.          | $\bullet$ When headphones are used, Audyssey MultEQ $^{(\!\!R\!)}$ XT, Audyssey Dynamic EQ $^{(\!\!R\!)}$ and Audyssey Dynamic Volume $^{(\!\!R\!)}$ cannot be selected.   |                      |
| No sound is<br>produced from<br>surround back<br>speaker. | <ul> <li>Check if "Assign Mode" is set appropriately in order to output audio from the surround back speakers.</li> <li>Set "Speaker Config." – "Surr. Back" on the menu to something other than "None".</li> <li>Set the sound mode to something other than "STEREO" and</li> </ul> | <u>121</u><br><u>121</u><br>71   | Audyssey Dynamic<br>EQ <sup>®</sup> and Audyssey<br>Dynamic Volume <sup>®</sup><br>cannot be selected. | • Run Audyssey <sup>®</sup> Setup.   | <u>27, 87</u>        |
| No sound is   | "VIRTUAL".   |  | "M-DAX" cannot be selected.  | • Check that an analog signal or PCM signal (Sample Rate=44.1/48 kHz) is input. For playback of multichannel signals such as Dolby   |                      |
| No sound is produced from front height speaker.           | <ul> <li>Check if "Assign Mode" is set appropriately in order to output<br/>audio from the front height speakers.</li> <li>Set "Speaker Config." – "Front Height" on the menu to something<br/>other than "None".</li> </ul>   | <u>121</u><br><u>122</u>   |  | Digital or DTS surround, "M-DAX" cannot be used.<br>• Switch the sound mode to other than "DIRECT" or "PURE DIRECT".   | 71                   |

#### [FM]

| Symptom                 | Cause/Solution                                       | Page      |
|-------------------------|--|-----------|
| Reception fails, or     | • Change the antenna orientation or position.        | <u>21</u> |
| there is a lot of noise | <ul> <li>Use an FM outdoor antenna.</li> </ul>       | <u>21</u> |
| or distortion.          | • Separate the antenna from other connection cables. | <u>21</u> |

#### [iPod / USB memory device / Internet radio / Media server / Flickr / Pandora / SiriusXM]

| Symptom   | Cause/Solution   | Page      |
|---|--|-----------|
| iPod cannot be played.                                      | • Some iPods do not support being used connected directly to the iPod/USB port.  | <u>19</u> |
| The file names<br>are not displayed<br>properly ("", etc.). | • Characters that cannot be displayed are used. This is not a malfunction. On this unit, characters that cannot be displayed are replaced with a "." (period).                           | _         |
|   | <ul> <li>Invalid tags are used for files within the USB memory device<br/>connected to this unit. Use tags that are supported by this unit.</li> </ul>                                   | <u>39</u> |
| When a USB memory device is                                 | • The set cannot recognize a USB memory device. Check the connection.  | <u>19</u> |
| connected, "No<br>Connection" is<br>displayed.              | • This unit supports mass storage class and MTP-compatible USB memory devices. It will not recognize other USB memory devices.   | _         |
|   | • A USB memory device that the set cannot recognize is connected.<br>This is not a malfunction. marantz does not guarantee that all USB<br>memory devices will operate or receive power. | -         |
|   | • USB memory device is connected via USB hub. Connect the USB memory device directly to the iPod/USB port.   | _         |
|   | • The unit supports file structures with up to 8 levels and a total maximum of 5000 subfolders and files per 1 folder. Change the file structure of the USB memory device if necessary.  | <u>39</u> |
| Files on a USB<br>memory device<br>cannot be played.        | <ul> <li>The USB memory device format should be set to FAT16 or<br/>FAT32. For details, refer to the USB memory device's operating<br/>instructions.</li> </ul>                          | _         |
|   | <ul> <li>If the USB memory device is divided into multiple partitions, only<br/>files in partition one can be played.</li> </ul>   | -         |
|   | <ul> <li>Files are stored in a non-compatible format. Record the files in a<br/>compatible format.</li> </ul>  | <u>39</u> |
|   | • You are attempting to play a file that is copyright protected. Files that are copyright protected cannot be played on this unit.   | <u>39</u> |

| Symptom                                 | Cause/Solution   | Page           |
|---|--|----------------|
| Internet radio cannot                   | • Ethernet cable is not properly connected or network is   | <u>25</u>      |
| be played.                              | disconnected. Check the connection status.<br>• Program is being broadcast in non-compatible format. Only                          | 50             |
|   | Internet radio programs in MP3 and WMA can be played on this   | <u>00</u>      |
|   | unit.  |                |
|   | • The firewall of the PC or router has been activated. Check the   | _              |
|   | firewall settings of the connected PC or router.   |                |
|   | • Radio station is not currently broadcasting. Choose a radio station  | <u>50</u>      |
|   | that is currently broadcasting.  |                |
|   | • IP address is wrong. Check the set's IP address.   | <u>125</u>     |
|   | • Some radio stations may go silent at certain times of the day. In  | -              |
|   | this case, no audio is output even when a station is received. Try   |                |
|   | again later, or switch to another radio station.   |                |
| Files stored on a                       | • Files are stored in a non-compatible format. Record in a compatible  | <u>53</u>      |
| computer cannot be                      | format.  | 50             |
| played.                                 | • You are attempting to play a file that is copyright protected. Files that are copyright protected cannot be played on this unit. | <u>53</u>      |
|   | • Set and computer are connected by USB cable. The set's iPod/   | _              |
|   | USB port cannot be used for connection to a computer.  |                |
|   | • Media sharing settings are not correct. Change media sharing   | 54             |
|   | settings so that the unit can access the folders on your computer.   |                |
| Music stored on                         | • If you use a NAS in conformity with the DLNA standard, enable  | -              |
| a NAS cannot be                         | the DLNA server function in the NAS setting.   |                |
| played.                                 | • If you use a NAS that does not conform with the DLNA standard,   | <u>54</u>      |
|   | play the music via a PC. Set Windows Media Player's media  |                |
|   | sharing function and add NAS to the selected play folder.  |                |
|   | • If connection is restricted, set audio equipment as the connection   | -              |
|   | target.  |                |
| Server is not found,                    | • The computer's or router's firewall is activated. Check the  | -              |
| or it is not possible to connect to the | computer's or router's firewall settings.<br>• Computer's power is not turned on. Turn on the power.                               |                |
| server.                                 | Server is not running. Launch the server.  | _              |
| 361761.                                 | Server's IP address is wrong. Check the server's IP address.   | 125            |
| Cannot connect to                       | Radio station is not currently broadcasting. Wait a while before   |                |
| preset or favorite                      | trying again.  |                |
| radio stations.                         | Radio station is not currently in service. It is not possible to   | _              |
|   | connect to radio stations that are no longer in service.   |                |
| A list of broadcasting                  | Connection to the network is unstable. Reconnect to the network  | <u>25, 126</u> |
| stations is not                         | or redo the "Network" setting in the menu.   |                |
| displayed.                              |  |                |
|   |  |                |

| Symptom  | Cause/Solution  | Page      |
|--|---|-----------|
| For some radio<br>stations, "Radio<br>station server full" or<br>"Connection down"<br>is displayed and<br>station cannot be<br>connected to. | • Station is congested or not currently broadcasting. Wait a while before trying again.   | _         |
| Sound is broken<br>during playback.  | • Network or USB memory device's signal transfer speed is slow<br>or communications lines or radio station is congested. This is not<br>a malfunction. When playing broadcast data with a high bit rate,<br>the sound may be broken, depending on the communications<br>conditions. | _         |
| Sound quality is poor<br>or noise is heard<br>during play.   | • File being played has a low bit rate. This is not a malfunction.  | -         |
| Cannot login to<br>Pandora. ("Email<br>address" or<br>"Password" is<br>displayed.)   | • Login information is incorrect. Check if the "Email address" for<br>Pandora has been properly entered. Re-enter the "Password".<br>(Password is not displayed.)<br>http://www.pandora.com/marantz   | <u>60</u> |

#### [M-XPort]

| Symptom   | Cause/Solution  | Page                |
|---|---|---------------------|
| Audio is not output<br>when a wireless<br>receiver (RX101 is<br>connected). | • Check that the Bluetooth device and Wireless receiver (RX101) are correctly paired. | <u>22, 147, 148</u> |

## [Remote control unit]

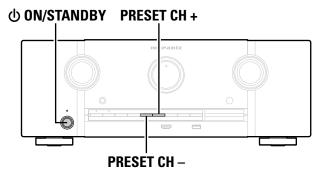
| Symptom                                | Cause/Solution  | Page          |
|--|---|---------------|
| The set cannot be                      | • Batteries are worn out. Replace with new batteries.   | <u>139</u>    |
| operated with the remote control unit. | • Operate the remote control unit within a distance of about 23 ft/7 m from this unit and at an angle of within 30°.  | <u>139</u>    |
|  | <ul> <li>Remove any obstacle between this unit and the remote control<br/>unit.</li> </ul>  | <u>139</u>    |
|  | • Insert the batteries in the proper direction, checking the $\oplus$ and $\Theta$ marks.   | <u>139</u>    |
|  | <ul> <li>The set's remote control sensor is exposed to strong light (direct<br/>sunlight, inverter type fluorescent bulb light, etc.). Move the set<br/>to a place in which the remote control sensor will not be exposed<br/>to strong light.</li> </ul> | <u>139</u>    |
|  | • The setting of the zone to operate does not match. Press <b>MAIN</b> or <b>ZONE2</b> to select the zone to operate.   | <u>28, 98</u> |

## [AirPlay]

| Symptom   | Cause/Solution  | Page           |
|---|---|----------------|
| The AirPlay icon<br>is not displayed<br>in iTunes or on the   | <ul> <li>This unit and the computer or iPhone/iPod touch/iPad are not<br/>connected to the same network (LAN). Connect the computer or<br/>iPhone/iPod touch/iPad to the same network as this unit.</li> </ul>  | <u>25</u>      |
| iPhone/iPod touch/<br>iPad.   | <ul> <li>Tunes or the iPhone/iPod touch/iPad do not have firmware that<br/>supports AirPlay installed. Update to the latest firmware.</li> </ul>  | <u>131</u>     |
| No sound.   | <ul> <li>The volume in iTunes or on the iPhone/iPod touch/iPad is set to the minimum setting. Adjust the volume to the optimum level.</li> <li>This unit is not selected in the screen that is displayed when iTunes or the iPhone/iPod touch/iPad is started. Start iTunes or switch on the iPhone/iPod touch/iPad, click the AirPlay icon in the displayed screen, and select this unit.</li> </ul> | -<br><u>69</u> |
|   | <ul> <li>AirPlay playback has not started. Click the ► button in iTunes or<br/>press the ► button on the iPhone/iPod touch/iPad.</li> </ul>   | -              |
| When using AirPlay with the iPhone/   | <ul> <li>Quit the application running in the background of the iPhone/iPod<br/>touch/iPad, and then play using AirPlay.</li> </ul>  | -              |
| iPod touch/iPad, the<br>sound suffers from<br>intermittent breaks<br>or AirPlay does not<br>function. | <ul> <li>When playing via a wireless connection, outside conditions may<br/>affect the unit. To remedy this, change the network environment,<br/>e.g. shorten the distance to the wireless LAN access point.</li> <li>Update the iPhone/iPod touch/iPad application or iTunes to the<br/>latest version.</li> </ul>   | _              |

## Resetting the microprocessor

Perform this procedure if the display is abnormal or if operations cannot be performed. When the microprocessor is reset, all the settings are reset to their default values.



Turn off the power using 也.

**2** Press 0 ON/STANDBY while simultaneously pressing PRESET CH + and PRESET CH -.

**3** Once the display starts flashing at intervals of about 1 second, release the two buttons.

## 

If in step 3 the display does not flash at intervals of about 1 second, start over from step 1.

# **Specifications**

| Audio section  |  | Tuner section  | [FM]   |
|--|--|--|--|
| Power amplifier<br>Rated output:   | Front:<br>100 W + 100 W (8 Ω, 20 Hz – 20 kHz with 0.08 % T.H.D.)<br>Center:<br>100 W (8 Ω, 20 Hz – 20 kHz with 0.08 % T.H.D.)<br>Surround:<br>100 W + 100 W (8 Ω, 20 Hz – 20 kHz with 0.08 % T.H.D.) | Receiving Range:<br>Usable Sensitivity:<br>50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:<br>S/N :<br>Total harmonic Distortion:          | (Note: μV at 75 Ω, 0 dBf = 1 x 10 <sup>-15</sup> W)<br>87.5 MHz - 107.9 MHz<br>1.2 μV (12.8 dBf)<br>MONO 2.8 μV (20.2 dBf)<br>MONO 70 dB (IHF–A weighted, DIRECT mode)<br>STEREO 67 dB (IHF–A weighted, DIRECT mode)<br>MONO 0.7 % (1 kHz) |
| Maximum effective output power:  | Surround back:<br>100 W + 100 W (8 Ω, 20 Hz – 20 kHz with 0.08 % T.H.D.)<br>Front:   | General<br>Power supply:   | STEREO 1.0 % (1 kHz)   |
|  | 150 W + 150 W (6 Ω, 1 kHz with 10 % T.H.D.)<br>Center:<br>150 W (6 Ω, 1 kHz with 10 % T.H.D.)<br>Surround:   | Power supply.<br>Power consumption:<br>Power consumption in standby mode:<br>Power consumption in CEC standby<br>mode: | 650 W<br>0.2 W   |
|  | 150 W + 150 W (6 Ω, 1 kHz with 10 % T.H.D.)<br>Surround back:<br>150 W + 150 W (6 Ω, 1 kHz with 10 % T.H.D.)   | mode:<br>Power comsumption in network<br>standby mode:   | 0.5 W<br>2.7 W   |
| Output connectors:   | 6 – 8 Ω  | For purposes of improvement, specifica   | ations and design are subject to change without notice   |
| Input sensitivity/Input impedance:<br>Frequency response:<br>S/N:  | 200 mV/47 kΩ<br>10 Hz – 100 kHz — +1, –3 dB (DIRECT mode)<br>100 dB (IHF–A weighted, DIRECT mode)  |  |  |
| $\Box$ Video section   |  |  |  |
| <ul> <li>Standard video connectors<br/>Input/output level and impedance:<br/>Frequency response:</li> <li>Color component video connector</li> </ul> | 1 Vp-p, 75 Ω<br>5 Hz – 10 MHz — 0, –3 dB   |  |  |
| Frequency response:  | Y (brightness) signal — 1 Vp-p, 75 Ω<br>Pв / Cв signal — 0.7 Vp-p, 75 Ω<br>Pr / Cr signal — 0.7 Vp-p, 75 Ω<br>5 Hz – 60 MHz — 0, –3 dB   |  |  |

## Index

#### Image: Second second

| 2.1-channel85 |
|---------------|
| 3D11          |
| 5.1-channel   |
| 6.1-channel   |
| 7.1-channel   |

### 🐨 A

| A2DP                                 |           |
|--------------------------------------|-----------|
| Accessories                          |           |
| Add New Feature                      |           |
| Adjust EQ                            |           |
| Adjusting the master volume          |           |
| Adobe RGB color / Adobe YCC601       | color 147 |
| AirPlay                              |           |
| Amp Assign                           |           |
| App Store                            |           |
| ARC                                  |           |
| Aspect Ratio                         |           |
| Audio                                |           |
| Audio Delay                          |           |
| Audio Display                        |           |
| Audyssey                             |           |
| Audyssey Dynamic EQ <sup>®</sup>     | 109, 147  |
| Audyssey Dynamic Volume <sup>®</sup> |           |
| Audyssey MultEQ® XT                  |           |
| Audyssey <sup>®</sup> Setup          |           |
| Auto Lip Sync                        |           |
| Auto Preset Memory                   |           |
| Auto Standby                         |           |
|                                      |           |

## 🕼 B

| Bass ····· | 107, 12 | 2  |
|------------|---------|----|
| Bi-amp     |         | 36 |
| Bluetooth  | ·22, 14 | 17 |
| Brightness | 11      | 2  |

## @ C

| Cable                    |
|--------------------------|
| Audio cable 12           |
| Coaxial digital cable 12 |
| Component video cable 12 |
| Ethernet cable12         |
| HDMI cable               |
| Optical cable            |
| Speaker cable            |
| Subwoofer cable          |
| Video cable 12           |
| Center Image             |
| Center Width 107         |

| Characters<br>Condensation<br>Connection |        |
|--|--------|
| 7.1CH IN<br>Blu-ray Disc player          |        |
| Cable TV·····                            |        |
| CD player ·····                          |        |
| DC OUT ······                            |        |
| Digital camcorder                        |        |
| DVD player                               | 10, 15 |
| External power amplifier                 |        |
| FM                                       |        |
| Game console                             |        |
| HDMI                                     | 7      |
| Home network (LAN)                       |        |
| iPod (USB)                               |        |
| Media player                             | 10, 18 |
| Power cord                               |        |
| Remote control jacks                     |        |
| RS-232C                                  |        |
| Satellite tuner                          | 14     |
| Set-top box ·····                        | 10, 14 |
| Speaker                                  | 79     |
| TV                                       |        |
| USB memory device                        | 19     |
| Wireless receiver                        |        |
| Content Type                             | 11     |
| Contrast                                 | 112    |
| Crossovers                               |        |
| Curve Copy                               | 110    |
|  |        |

### 🕼 D

#### DTS

| DTS 06/24   |  | 1  |
|---|--|--|
| DTS 96/24<br>DTS Digital Surround<br>DTS-ES Discrete 6.1<br>DTS-ES Matrix 6.1<br>DTS Express<br>DTS-HD<br>DTS-HD High Resolution Audio<br>DTS-HD Master Audio<br>DTS NEO:6™ Surround<br>Dual backup memory function<br>Dynamic Compression<br>Dynamic EQ<br>Dynamic range | 147<br>74, 147<br>74, 147<br>74, 148<br>74, 148<br>148<br>148<br>148<br> | Info Disg<br>Informat<br>Audio<br>Firmw<br>Video<br>ZONE<br>Input As<br>Input M<br>Inputs<br>Input Se<br>Input sig<br>Inputing |
| Dynamic Volume  | 110  | IP Contr<br>i/p Scale  |

## 🕼 E

| Edit Name ······125                          |
|--|
| Enhancer                                     |
| Error messages (Audyssey <sup>®</sup> Setup) |

#### 🐨 F Favorite Memory.

| Favorite Memory              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| Firmware                     |  |
| FLAC                         |  |
| Flickr                       |  |
| FM42                         |  |
| FM indoor antenna21          |  |
| Format                       |  |
| Friendly Name 125            |  |
| Front A/B (connection)78, 84 |  |
| Front Display                |  |
| Front Height 122             |  |
| Front height speaker         |  |
| Front Panel                  |  |
| Front Speaker 123            |  |

## 🐨 G

| General 1            | 28 |
|----------------------|----|
| Graphic EQ ······· 1 | 10 |

#### 🕼 H HDCP

| HDCP 11, 148           |  |
|------------------------|--|
| HDMI                   |  |
| HDMI Audio Out112      |  |
| HDMI Control           |  |
| HDMI Setup ······112   |  |
| Headphones             |  |
| Height Gain ······ 107 |  |
| Hide Sources 118       |  |
| Home Theater EQ106     |  |
| Hue                    |  |

| Info Display ······114  |
|-------------------------|
| Information 125, 130    |
| Audio130                |
| Firmware······131       |
| Video                   |
| ZONE 131                |
| Input Assign 117        |
| Input Mode······119     |
| Inputs 116              |
| Input Select            |
| Input signal            |
| Inputting characters104 |
| IP Control              |
| i/p Scaler113           |
| iTunes                  |
|                         |

#### r∰ L

| Language 129              |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| Lch Level                 |  |
| Levels ······123          |  |
| LFE                       |  |
| Limit                     |  |
| Listening mode71          |  |
| Listening position        |  |
| Lock133                   |  |
| Loudness Management106    |  |
| Low Frequency Effects 106 |  |
|                           |  |

## 🕼 M

| Maintenance Mode 127      |
|---------------------------|
| MAIN ZONE 148             |
| Manual Setup 121          |
| M-DAX108                  |
| Menu map······100         |
| Mode                      |
| MP3148                    |
| MPEG                      |
| MultEQ <sup>®</sup> XT109 |
| Mute Level 108, 129       |

## 🐨 N

| Network          | 4 |
|------------------|---|
| Noise Reduction  | 2 |
| Notifications 13 | 2 |

### **@ 0**

| On-screen Info114 |
|-------------------|
| Operation Mode37  |
| Output Settings   |

| C P                                    |          |
|--|----------|
| Pairing                                | 148      |
| Pandora <sup>®</sup>                   |          |
| Panel lock function                    |          |
| Panorama                               | 100      |
| Parameter Check                        |          |
| Picture Adjust                         | 11:      |
| Picture View                           | 68       |
| Playback                               |          |
| Auto surround                          | 7        |
| Blu-ray Disc player                    |          |
| CD player                              |          |
| Direct                                 | . 71, 7  |
| DVD player                             |          |
| FLAC                                   | . 39, 5  |
| Flickr ·····                           |          |
| FM                                     |          |
| Internet radio                         |          |
| iPod (USB)                             |          |
| JPEG ······                            | · 39, 5  |
| MP3 39                                 | , 50, 53 |
| MPEG-4 AAC ·····                       |          |
| NAS                                    |          |
| Original listening mode                | 7!       |
| Pandora <sup>®</sup> ·····             |          |
| PC                                     |          |
| Pure direct                            |          |
| SiriusXM ·····                         |          |
| Stereo                                 |          |
| USB memory device                      |          |
| WAV                                    | . 39, 5  |
| WMA                                    |          |
| ZONE2 ·····<br>Power Off Control ····· |          |
| Power Off Control                      |          |
| Power On Level                         |          |
| Power On volume                        |          |
| Preset Name                            |          |
| Preset Skip                            |          |
| Progressive                            |          |
| Progressive Mode                       |          |
| Protection circuit                     |          |
|  |          |
|  |          |

#### 🖅 R

| Random                  |  |
|-------------------------|--|
| Rch Level               |  |
| Rear panel              |  |
| Reference Level Offset  |  |
| Remote control setting  |  |
| Remote control unit     |  |
| Inserting the batteries |  |
| Remote lock function    |  |

| Remote Mode                  | 36, 37 |
|------------------------------|--------|
| Remove Favorites             |        |
| Repeat                       | 38, 66 |
| Resetting the microprocessor |        |
| Resolutions                  | 114    |
|                              |        |

## 🐨 S

| Sampling frequency                          |  |
|---|--|
| Scale 108<br>Selecting the input source 34  |  |
| Settings 126                                |  |
| Setup Lock                                  |  |
| SiriusXM                                    |  |
| Sleep timer                                 |  |
| Sound Mode71, 141                           |  |
| Source Level                                |  |
| Source Rename118                            |  |
| Speaker                                     |  |
| Connect                                     |  |
| Set up                                      |  |
| Speaker Config                              |  |
| Speaker impedance79, 148                    |  |
| Speakers ······120                          |  |
| Speaker Selection                           |  |
| Standby Source 113<br>Subwoofer 107         |  |
| Subwoofer Level                             |  |
| Subwoofer setting28                         |  |
| Surr. Back 121                              |  |
| Surround back speaker 77, 78, 80, 82        |  |
| Surround Parameter 106<br>sYCC601 color 148 |  |
| SYCC601 color148                            |  |
| CF T  |  |
| Text Search65                               |  |
| Tone  |  |
| Tone Control 107<br>Trademark 140           |  |
| Treble                                      |  |
|   |  |

Tune Mode------43

Update------ 131

I 🖉 🖉

#### Video 1111 Video conversion 6 Video Conversion 113 Video Mode 113 Video Select 119 Volume 108, 114 Volume Display 114 Volume Limit 129

#### 17 W

| Web control             | . 93 |
|-------------------------|------|
| Windows Media DRM······ | 149  |
| Windows Media Player    | 149  |
| WMA                     | 149  |

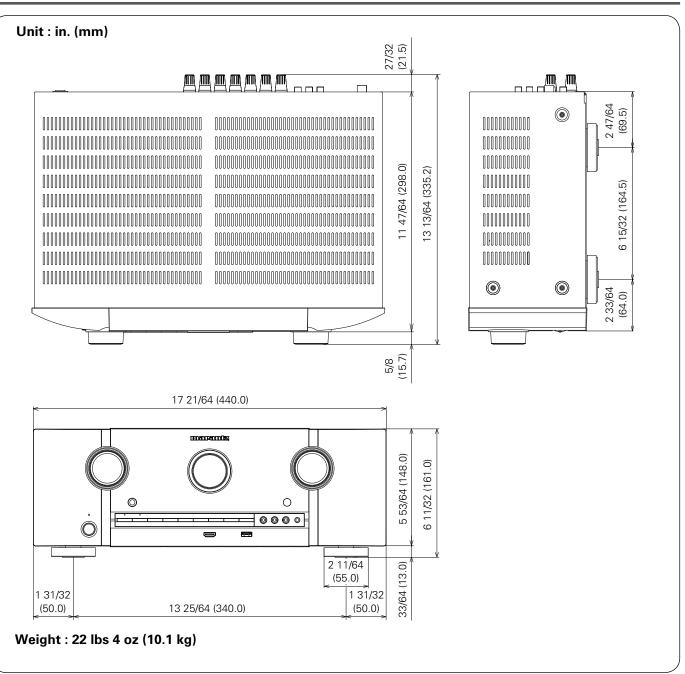
#### CT X

| x.v.Color |  | 4 |
|-----------|--|---|
|-----------|--|---|

#### 🕼 Z

| ZONE298, 149    |
|-----------------|
| ZONE2 Setup 125 |
| Zone Rename 129 |

## Dimensions



## www.marantz.com

You can find your nearest authorized distributor or dealer on our website.



D&M Holdings Inc. 3520 10096 00AM